

## MEMORANDUM

**TO:** USA Drafting Committee, Advisors, and Observers  
**FROM:** Joel Seligman  
**DATE:** December 17, 2001  
**SUBJECT:** Draft of Uniform Securities Act for January 18-20 Drafting Committee Meeting

Please find attached Attachment A which compares this draft to earlier drafts. Please also find attached Attachment B, which is a schedule for the January 18-20, 2002 meeting.

The Drafting Committee's intention this year is to complete work on the Uniform Securities Act so that it can receive a final reading at next July's NCCUSL Annual Meeting. We anticipate two more meetings. During the January meeting, we will address Parts 2, 3, and 6 and related definitions. This will leave Part 7, Sections 103, 102(31), and unresolved issues for a final meeting, to be scheduled.

Unlike earlier drafts, this draft is "redlined," with deletions to the statutory sections presented at the NCCUSL Annual Meeting in August 2001 crossed out and additions italicized. At the August 2001 meeting all provisions, other than Section 304, were read.

There has been renumbering of some sections. I have retained in Attachment A a description of those Sections that have been tentatively approved, those Sections that are new; those Sections that are revised; and those Sections that have not been considered yet.

Please submit comments by January 9, 2002. Comments or proposals for change in this draft can be forwarded to:

Dean Joel Seligman  
[Reporter]  
Washington University School of Law  
One Brookings Drive  
St. Louis, Missouri 63130  
Fax: (314) 935-4029  
E-mail: [seligman@wulaw.wustl.edu](mailto:seligman@wulaw.wustl.edu)

**and**

Richard B. Smith, Esq.  
[Chairman of Drafting Committee]  
Davis Polk & Wardwell  
450 Lexington Avenue  
New York, NY 10017  
Fax: (212) 450-5536  
E-mail: [rsmith@dpw.com](mailto:rsmith@dpw.com)

JS/jm

ATTACHMENT A  
NEW DRAFT COMPARED TO EARLIER DRAFTS

ARTICLE 1. DEFINITIONS

SECTION 101. SHORT TITLE.

SECTION 102. DEFINITIONS.

(1) Administrator	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(2) Agent	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(3) Bank	
(4) Broker-Dealer	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(5) Depository institution	
(6) Federal covered investment adviser	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(7) Federal covered security	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(8) Filing	REVISED
(9) Fraud	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(10) Guaranteed	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(11) Institutional investor	TENTATIVE APPROVAL OTHER THAN §102(11)(L)
(12) Insurance company	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(13) Insured	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(14) International bank	
(15) Investment adviser	REVISED
(16) Investment adviser representative	REVISED
(17) Issuer	REVISED
(18) Nonissuer transaction or nonissuer distribution	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(19) Offer to purchase	
(20) Person	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(21) Place of business	
(22) Predecessor act	
(23) Price amendment	
(24) Principal place of business	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(25) Record	
(26) Sale	
(27) Securities Act of 1933, etc.	
(28) Securities and Exchange Commission	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(29) Security	REVISED
(30) Self-regulatory organization	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(31) Sign	
(32) State	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(33) Underwriter	REVISED

[SECTION 103 ELECTRONIC RECORDS AND SIGNATURES]

ARTICLE 2. EXEMPTIONS FROM REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES

SECTION 201. EXEMPT SECURITIES.

(1) United States government and municipal securities	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(2) Foreign government securities	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(3) Depository institutions and international bank securities	
(4) Insurance company securities	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(5) Public utility securities	REVISED
(6) Certain options and rights	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
(7) Nonprofit organization securities	REVISED

(8) Cooperatives TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(9) Equipment trust certificates REVISED

SECTION 202. EXEMPT TRANSACTIONS.

(1) Isolated nonissuer transactions TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(2) Nonissuer transactions in specified outstanding securities TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(3) Nonissuer transactions in specified foreign securities TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(4) Nonissuer transactions in securities subject to REVISED  
Securities Exchange Act reporting  
(5) Nonissuer transactions in specified securities with TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
fixed maturity, interest or dividend  
(6) Unsolicited brokerage transactions TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(7) Nonissuer transactions by pledgees TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(8) Underwriter transactions TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(9) Unit secured transactions TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(10) Bankruptcy, guardian, or conservator transactions TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(11) Transactions with institutional investors REVISED  
(12) Limited offering transactions REVISED  
(13) Transactions with existing security holders TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(14) Offerings when registered under this [Act] and the TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
Securities Act of 1933  
(15) Offerings when registered under this [Act] and  
exempt from the Securities Act of 1933  
(16) Control transactions TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
(17) Rescission offers  
(18) Out-of-state offers or sales  
(19) Employee benefit plans TENTATIVE APPROVAL

SECTION 203. ADDITIONAL EXEMPTIONS AND TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
WAIVERS.

SECTION 204. DENIAL, CONDITION, LIMITATION, TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
OR REVOCATION OF EXEMPTIONS.

ARTICLE 3 REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES  
AND NOTICE FILINGS OF FEDERAL COVERED SECURITIES

SECTION 301. SECURITIES REGISTRATION TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
REQUIREMENT.

SECTION 302. NOTICE FILINGS AND FEES §§302(a), (c), (d)  
APPLICABLE TO CERTAIN FEDERAL COVERED TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
SECURITIES.

SECTION 303. SECURITIES REGISTRATION BY TENTATIVE APPROVAL  
COORDINATION.

SECTION 304. SECURITIES REGISTRATION BY §§304(a), (c)-(e)  
QUALIFICATION. TENTATIVE APPROVAL

SECTION 305. SECURITIES REGISTRATION §§305(a)-(f), (h)-(k)  
FILINGS. TENTATIVE APPROVAL

SECTION 306. DENIAL, SUSPENSION, AND §§306(a)(1)-(6), (b), (e)

REVOCAION OF SECURITIES REGISTRATION.

TENTATIVE APPROVAL

ARTICLE 4 BROKER-DEALERS, AGENTS, INVESTMENT ADVISERS, INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVES, FEDERAL COVERED INVESTMENT ADVISERS, AND FEDERAL COVERED INVESTMENT ADVISERS

SECTION 401. BROKER-DEALER REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS.	REVISED
SECTION 402. AGENT REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS.	REVISED
SECTION 403. INVESTMENT ADVISER REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS.	REVISED
SECTION 404. INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS.	REVISED
SECTION 405. FEDERAL COVERED INVESTMENT ADVISER NOTICE FILING REQUIREMENT.	REVISED
SECTION 406. REGISTRATION BY BROKER-DEALERS, AGENTS, INVESTMENT ADVISERS, AND INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVES.	REVISED
SECTION 407. SUCCESSION AND CHANGE IN REGISTRATION.	REVISED
SECTION 408. TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT OF AGENTS AND INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVES.	REVISED
SECTION 409. WITHDRAWAL OF REGISTRATION OF BROKER-DEALERS, AGENTS, INVESTMENT ADVISERS, AND INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVES.	
SECTION 410. FILING FEES.	REVISED
SECTION 411. POST REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS.	REVISED
SECTION 412. DENIAL, REVOCATION, SUSPENSION, CANCELLATION, WITHDRAWAL, RESTRICTION, CONDITION, OR LIMITATION OF REGISTRATION.	REVISED

ARTICLE 5 FRAUD AND LIABILITIES

SECTION 501. GENERAL FRAUD.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 502. PROHIBITED CONDUCT IN PROVIDING INVESTMENT ADVICE.	REVISED

SECTION 503. EVIDENTIARY BURDEN.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 504. FILING OF SALES AND ADVERTISING LITERATURE.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 505. MISLEADING FILINGS.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 506. MISREPRESENTATIONS CONCERNING REGISTRATION OR EXEMPTION.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
[SECTION 507. QUALIFIED IMMUNITY.]	
SECTION 508. CRIMINAL PENALTIES.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 509. CIVIL LIABILITY.	REVISED
SECTION 510. RESCISSION OFFERS.	

ARTICLE 6 ADMINISTRATION AND JUDICIAL REVIEW

SECTION 601. ADMINISTRATION OF [ACT].	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 602. INVESTIGATIONS AND SUBPOENAS.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL SECTIONS 602(a)-(c)
SECTION 603. CIVIL ENFORCEMENT.	
SECTION 604. ADMINISTRATIVE ENFORCEMENT	
SECTION 605. RULES, FORMS, ORDERS, INTERPRETATIVE OPINIONS, AND HEARINGS.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 606. ADMINISTRATIVE FILES AND OPINIONS.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 607. PUBLIC RECORDS; CONFIDENTIALITY.	REVISED
SECTION 608. COOPERATION WITH OTHER AGENCIES.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 609. JUDICIAL REVIEW.	TENTATIVE APPROVAL
SECTION 610. JURISDICTION.	
SECTION 611. SERVICE OF PROCESS.	
SECTION 612. UNIFORMITY OF APPLICATION AND CONSTRUCTION.	
SECTION 613. SEVERABILITY CLAUSE.	

ARTICLE 7. TRANSITION.

SECTION 701. EFFECTIVE DATE.

SECTION 702. REPEALS.

SECTION 703. APPLICATION TO EXISTING PROCEEDING.

## ATTACHMENT B

Schedule January 18-20, 2002

January 18

### ARTICLE 6. Administrator and Judicial Review

January 19-20

#### PART 2. Exemptions from Registration of Securities

Section 102(3)	Bank
Section 102(5)	Depository Institution
Section 102(10)	Guaranteed
Section 102(11)	Institutional Investor
Section 102(12)	Insurance Company
Section 102(27)	Securities Act of 1933, etc.
Section 102(29)	Security

#### PART 3. Registration of Securities and Notice of Filings of Federal Covered Securities

Section 102(8)	Filing
Section 102(17)	Issuer
Section 102(19)	Offer to Purchase
Section 102(23)	Price Amendment
Section 102(25)	Record
Section 102(26)	Sale
Section 102(33)	Underwriter

DRAFT  
FOR DISCUSSION ONLY

# UNIFORM SECURITIES ACT

Last Amended or Revised in 2002

---

NATIONAL CONFERENCE OF COMMISSIONERS  
ON UNIFORM STATE LAWS

---

January 18-20, 2002  
Washington, D. C.

*WITH PREFATORY NOTE AND COMMENTS*

Copyright ©2001  
By  
NATIONAL CONFERENCE OF COMMISSIONERS  
ON UNIFORM STATE LAWS

*The ideas and conclusions set forth in this draft, including the proposed statutory language and any comments or reporter's notes, have not been passed upon by the National Conference of Commissioners on Uniform State Laws or the Drafting Committee. They do not necessarily reflect the views of the Conference and its Commissioners and the Drafting Committee and its Members and Reporters. Proposed statutory language may not be used to ascertain the intent or meaning of any promulgated final statutory proposal.*

# UNIFORM SECURITIES ACT *(2002)*

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE 1	
TITLE AND DEFINITIONS	
SECTION 101. SHORT TITLE. . . . .	1
SECTION 102. DEFINITIONS. . . . .	1
[SECTION 103 ELECTRONIC RECORDS AND SIGNATURES. . . . .	25]
ARTICLE 2	
EXEMPTIONS FROM REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES	
SECTION 201. EXEMPT SECURITIES. . . . .	27
SECTION 202. EXEMPT TRANSACTIONS. . . . .	34
SECTION 203. ADDITIONAL EXEMPTIONS AND WAIVERS. . . . .	45
SECTION 204. DENIAL, CONDITION, LIMITATION, OR REVOCATION OF EXEMPTIONS. . . . .	46
ARTICLE 3	
REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES AND NOTICE FILINGS OF FEDERAL COVERED SECURITIES	
SECTION 301. SECURITIES REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT. . . . .	48
SECTION 302. NOTICE FILINGS AND FEES APPLICABLE TO CERTAIN FEDERAL COVERED SECURITIES. . . . .	48
SECTION 303. SECURITIES REGISTRATION BY COORDINATION. . . . .	50
SECTION 304. SECURITIES REGISTRATION BY QUALIFICATION. . . . .	53
SECTION 305. SECURITIES REGISTRATION FILINGS. . . . .	59
SECTION 306. DENIAL, SUSPENSION, AND REVOCATION OF SECURITIES REGISTRATION. . . . .	64
ARTICLE 4	
BROKER-DEALERS, AGENTS, INVESTMENT ADVISERS, INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVES, AND FEDERAL COVERED INVESTMENT ADVISERS	
SECTION 401. BROKER-DEALER REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS. . . . .	72
SECTION 402. AGENT REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS. . . . .	75
SECTION 403. INVESTMENT ADVISER REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS. . . . .	77
SECTION 404. INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS. . . . .	79
SECTION 405. FEDERAL COVERED INVESTMENT ADVISER NOTICE FILING REQUIREMENT. . . . .	81
SECTION 406. REGISTRATION BY BROKER-DEALERS, AGENTS, INVESTMENT ADVISERS, AND INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVES. . . . .	83
SECTION 407. SUCCESSION AND CHANGE IN REGISTRATION. . . . .	85
SECTION 408. TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT OF AGENTS AND INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVES. . . . .	87
SECTION 409. WITHDRAWAL OF REGISTRATION OF BROKER-DEALERS, AGENTS, INVESTMENT ADVISERS, AND INVESTMENT ADVISERS REPRESENTATIVES. . . . .	89
SECTION 410. FILING FEES. . . . .	89
SECTION <del>409</del> <del>SUBSTANTIVE REQUISITIONS</del> : 411. <i>POSTREGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS</i> . . . . .	90
SECTION <del>408</del> 412. DENIAL, REVOCATION, SUSPENSION, CANCELLATION, WITHDRAWAL, RESTRICTION, CONDITION, OR LIMITATION OF REGISTRATION. . . . .	94
<del>PART</del> ARTICLE 5	
FRAUD AND LIABILITIES	
SECTION 501. GENERAL FRAUD. . . . .	101
SECTION 502. PROHIBITED CONDUCT IN PROVIDING INVESTMENT ADVICE. . . . .	102
SECTION 503. EVIDENTIARY BURDEN. . . . .	106
SECTION 504. FILING OF SALES AND ADVERTISING LITERATURE. . . . .	106

SECTION 505. MISLEADING FILINGS. ....	107
SECTION 506. MISREPRESENTATIONS CONCERNING REGISTRATION OR EXEMPTION. ....	108
SECTION 507. QUALIFIED IMMUNITY. ....	108
SECTION 508. CRIMINAL PENALTIES. ....	109
SECTION 509. CIVIL LIABILITY. ....	116

ARTICLE 6

ADMINISTRATION AND JUDICIAL REVIEW

SECTION 601. ADMINISTRATION OF [ACT]. ....	129
SECTION 602. INVESTIGATIONS AND SUBPOENAS. ....	130
SECTION 603. CIVIL ENFORCEMENT. ....	133
SECTION 604. ADMINISTRATIVE ENFORCEMENT. ....	135
SECTION 606 <sup>5</sup> . RULES, FORMS, ORDERS, <u>INTERPRETATIVE OPINIONS</u> , AND HEARINGS. ....	137
SECTION 606. ADMINISTRATIVE FILES AND OPINIONS. ....	140
SECTION 608 <sup>7</sup> . PUBLIC RECORDS; CONFIDENTIALITY. ....	140
SECTION 609 <sup>8</sup> . COOPERATION WITH OTHER AGENCIES. ....	142
SECTION 610 <sup>09</sup> . JUDICIAL REVIEW. ....	144
SECTION 611 <sup>0</sup> . JURISDICTION. ....	144
SECTION 611. SERVICE OF PROCESS. ....	148
SECTION 613 <sup>2</sup> . UNIFORMITY OF APPLICATION AND CONSTRUCTION. ....	149
SECTION 614 <sup>3</sup> . SEVERABILITY CLAUSE. ....	150

ARTICLE 7

TRANSITION

SECTION 701. EFFECTIVE DATE. ....	151
SECTION 702. REPEALS. ....	151
SECTION 703. APPLICATION TO EXISTING PROCEEDING. ....	151

1 **UNIFORM SECURITIES ACT (2002)**

2  
3 **PREFATORY NOTE**

4  
5 There are two versions of the Uniform Securities Act currently in force.

6  
7 The Uniform Securities Act of 1956 (“1956 Act”) has been adopted at one time or another, in  
8 whole or in part, by 37 jurisdictions.

9  
10 The Revised Uniform Securities Act of 1985 (“RUSA”) has been adopted in only a few  
11 States.

12  
13 Both Acts have been preempted in part by the National Securities Markets Improvement Act  
14 of 1996 (“NSMIA”) and the Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act of 1998.

15  
16 The need to modernize the Uniform Securities Act is a consequence of a combination of the  
17 new federal preemptive legislation, significant recent changes in the technology of securities  
18 trading and regulation, and the increasingly interstate and international aspects of securities  
19 transactions.

20  
21 The approach of this Act is to use the substance and vocabulary of the more widely adopted  
22 1956 Act, when appropriate. The Act also takes into account, when appropriate, RUSA, federal  
23 preemptive legislation, and the other developments that are described in this Note and the  
24 Official Comments.

25  
26 The Act has been reorganized to follow the National Conference of Commissioners on  
27 Uniform State Laws (“NCCUSL”) Procedural and Drafting Manual 15-41 (1997).

28  
29 This is a new Uniform Securities Act. Amendment of the earlier 1956 Act or RUSA would  
30 not be wise given the different versions of the 1956 Act enacted by the States and the  
31 determination to seek enactment in all state jurisdictions of the new Uniform Securities Act after  
32 it is adopted by the National Conference.

33  
34 The Act is solely a new Uniform Securities Act. It does not codify or append related  
35 regulations or guidelines. The Act also authorizes State Administrators to adopt further  
36 exemptions without statutory amendment (*see, e.g.*, Section 203).

37  
38 The Act includes headings for the subsections as an aid to readers. Unlike section captions,  
39 subsection headings must not be a part of the official text itself. Each jurisdiction in which this  
40 Act is introduced may consider whether to adopt the headings as a part of the statute and whether  
41 to adopt a provision clarifying the effect, if any, to be given to the headings. The Act also has  
42 been conformed to current style conventions.

43  
44 The Drafting Committee reviewed several drafts in meetings between 1998 and 2002. The  
45 Committee had the assistance of advisors, consultants, and observers from several interested  
46 groups, including, alphabetically, the American Bar Association, the Certified Financial  
47 Planners, the Financial Planning Board of Standards, the Investment Company Institute, the  
48 Investment Counsel Association of America, the National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc.,

1 the North American Securities Administrators Association, the Securities and Exchange  
2 Commission, and the Securities Industry Association. In addition, the Reporter and the Chair  
3 met on several occasions with committees or representatives of these and other groups.



1 (ii) the individual's compensation is not based, in whole or in [material] part,  
2 upon the amount of purchases or sales of the issuer's own securities; or

3 (C) an individual the administrator, by rule or order, specifies.

4 (3) "Bank" means:

5 (A) a banking institution organized under the laws of the United States;

6 (B) a member bank of the Federal Reserve System;

7 (C) any other banking institution, whether incorporated or not, doing business under  
8 laws of a State or of the United States, a substantial portion of the business of which consists of  
9 receiving deposits or exercising fiduciary powers similar to those permitted to national banks  
10 under the authority of the Comptroller of the Currency pursuant to the first section of Public Law  
11 87-722 (12 U.S.C. 92a), and which is supervised and examined by a state or federal agency  
12 having supervision over banks, and which is not operated for the purpose of evading this [Act];  
13 and

14 (D) a receiver, conservator, or other liquidating agent of any institution or firm  
15 included in subparagraphs (A), (B), or (C).

16 (4) "Broker-dealer" means a person engaged in the business of effecting transactions in  
17 securities for the account of others or for the person's own account. The term does not include:

18 (A) an agent ~~[acting on behalf of the broker-dealer];~~

19 (B) an issuer;

20 (C) an international bank; or

21 (D) a person the administrator, by rule or order, specifies.

22 [(5) "Depository institution" means a bank; or a savings institution, ~~or~~ trust company, or  
23 credit union that is organized or chartered under the laws of a State or of the United States,

1 authorized to receive deposits, and supervised and examined by an official or agency of a State or  
2 the United States if its deposits or share accounts are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance  
3 Corporation, the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund, or a successor authorized by  
4 federal law. ~~The term also includes a credit union organized and supervised under the laws of~~  
5 ~~this State, whose deposits and share accounts are insured.~~ The term does not include:

6 (A) an insurance company or other organization primarily engaged in the insurance  
7 business;

8 (B) a Morris Plan bank;

9 (C) an industrial loan company; or

10 (D) a similar bank or company unless its deposits are insured by a federal agency.]

11 (6) “Federal covered investment adviser” means a person registered under the Investment  
12 Advisers Act of 1940.

13 (7) “Federal covered security” means a security that is or upon completion of a  
14 transaction will be a covered security under Section 18(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 or rules  
15 or regulations adopted under Section 18(b).

16 (8) “Filing” means the receipt of a record by the administrator or a designee of the  
17 administrator.

18 (9) “Fraud,” “deceit,” and “defraud” are not limited to common law deceit.

19 (10) “Guaranteed” means guaranteed as to payment of all principal and all interest.

20 (11) “Institutional investor” means any of the following, whether acting for itself or for  
21 others in a fiduciary capacity:

22 (A) a depository institution or international bank;

23 (B) an insurance company;

- 1 (C) a separate account of an insurance company;
- 2 (D) an investment company as defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940;
- 3 (E) a broker-dealer registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934;
- 4 (F) an employee pension, profit-sharing, or benefit plan if the plan has total assets in  
5 excess of \$25,000,000 or its investment decisions are made by a named fiduciary, as defined in  
6 the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, that is a broker-dealer registered under  
7 the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, an investment adviser registered or exempt from  
8 registration under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, an investment adviser registered under  
9 this [Act], a depository institution, or an insurance company;
- 10 (G) a plan established and maintained by a State, a political subdivision of a State, or  
11 an agency or instrumentality of a State or a political subdivision of a State for the benefit of its  
12 employees, if the plan has total assets in excess of \$25,000,000 or its investment decisions are  
13 made by a [duly designated public official] or by a named fiduciary, as defined in the Employee  
14 Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, that is a broker-dealer registered under the Securities  
15 Exchange Act of 1934, an investment adviser registered or exempt from registration under the  
16 Investment Advisers Act of 1940, an investment adviser registered under this [Act], a depository  
17 institution, or an insurance company;
- 18 (H) a trust, if it has total assets in excess of \$25,000,000, its trustee is a depository  
19 institution, its participants are exclusively plans of the types identified in subparagraph (F) or  
20 (G), regardless of size of assets, except a trust that includes as participants self-directed  
21 individual retirement accounts or similar self-directed plans;
- 22 (I) an organization described in Section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code, or a  
23 corporation, Massachusetts or similar business trust, limited liability company, limited liability

1 partnership, or partnership, not formed for the specific purpose of acquiring the securities  
2 offered, with total assets in excess of \$25,000,000;

3 (J) a small business investment company licensed by the Small Business  
4 Administration under Section 301(c) or (d) of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958 with  
5 total assets in excess of \$25,000,000;

6 (K) a private business development company as defined in Section 202(a)(22) of the  
7 Investment Advisers Act of 1940 with total assets in excess of \$25,000,000;

8 [(L) an investment adviser registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 with  
9 investments under management in excess of \$100 million, whether acting for its own account or  
10 for the account of others ~~on a under written discretionary basis authority;~~]

11 (M) a “qualified institutional ~~purchaser~~ buyer” as defined in Rule 144A(a)(1), other  
12 than Rule 144A(a)(1)(H), under the Securities Act of 1933;

13 (N) a “major U.S. institutional investor” as defined in Rule 15a-6(b)(4)(i) under the  
14 Securities Exchange Act of 1934;

15 (O) any other institutional purchaser; or

16 (P) any other person the administrator, by rule or order, specifies.

### 17 **Comments**

18 Source of Law: RUSA Section 101(5); Securities Act Rules 144A and 501(a).

19 1. Section 102(11)(H) concludes with an except clause meant to exclude self-directed plans  
20 for individuals from this definition.

21  
22 2. Section 102(11)(O) is meant to reach persons similar to those listed in Sections  
23 102(11)(A)-(N), but not otherwise listed.

24  
25 3. With respect to the exclusion of Rule 144A(1)(H) from Section 102(11)(M), the substance  
26 of Rule 144A(a)(1)(H) appears in Section 102(11)(I), but with a requirement of total assets in  
27 excess of \$25,000,000.

1 4. In *Cleary, Gottlieb, Steen & Hamilton*, (avail. Apr. 9, 1997), the Securities and Exchange  
2 Commission staff issued a no-action letter construing Rule 15a-6, which is the basis of Section  
3 101(11)(N), to permit a United States affiliated foreign dealer to enter into transactions with any  
4 entity, including any investment adviser that owns or controls (or, in the case of an investment  
5 adviser, has under management) in excess of \$100 million in aggregate financial assets.  
6

7 (12) “Insurance company” means a company organized as an insurance company whose  
8 primary business is writing insurance or reinsuring risks underwritten by insurance companies  
9 and subject to supervision by the insurance commissioner or a similar official or agency of a  
10 State.

11 (13) “Insured” means insured as to payment of all principal and all interest.

12 (14) “International bank” means an international banking institution of which the United  
13 States is a member and whose securities are exempt from registration under the Securities Act of  
14 1933.

15 (15) “Investment adviser” means a person that, for compensation, engages in the  
16 business of advising others, either directly or through publications or writings, as to the value of  
17 securities or the advisability of investing in, purchasing, or selling securities or that, for  
18 compensation and as a part of a regular business, issues or promulgates analyses or reports  
19 concerning securities. The term includes a financial planner or other person that, as an integral  
20 component of other financially related services, provides investment advisory services to others  
21 for compensation as part of a business or that holds itself out as providing investment advisory  
22 services to others for compensation. The term does not include:

23 (A) an investment adviser representative;

24 (B) a lawyer, accountant, engineer, or teacher whose performance of investment  
25 advisory services is solely incidental to the practice of the person’s profession;

26 (C) a broker-dealer or its agents whose performance of investment advisory services

1 is solely incidental to the conduct of business as a broker-dealer and who receives no special  
2 compensation for the investment advisory services;

3 (D) a publisher of a bona fide newspaper, news magazine, or business or financial  
4 publication of general and regular ~~and paid~~ circulation;

5 (E) a federal covered investment adviser;

6 (F) any other person that is ~~excepted~~ excluded in ~~under Section 202(a)(11)~~ of the  
7 Investment Advisers Act of 1940 from the definition of investment adviser; or

8 (G) any other person the administrator, by rule or order, specifies.

9 (16) “Investment adviser representative” means an individual employed by or associated  
10 with ~~for who represents~~ an investment adviser or federal covered investment adviser and who  
11 makes any recommendations or otherwise renders investment advice regarding securities,  
12 manages accounts or portfolios of clients, determines which recommendation or advice regarding  
13 securities should be given [~~,provides investment advisory services or holds out as providing~~  
14 investment advisory services,] receives compensation to solicit, ~~offer~~ ing to or negotiate for the  
15 sale of or selling investment advisory services, or supervising employees who perform any of the  
16 foregoing. The term does not include an individual:

17 (A) whose functions are clerical or ministerial;

18 (B) who is an agent whose performance of investment advisory services is solely  
19 incidental to the individual’s conduct as an agent and who receives no special compensation for  
20 investment advisory services;

21 (C) who is employed by or associated with a federal covered investment adviser,  
22 unless the individual:

23 (i) has a “place of business” in this State as that term is defined by rule under

1 Section 203A of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 and is *an* “investment adviser  
2 representative” as that term is defined by rule under Section 203A of the Investment Advisers  
3 Act of 1940, or

4 (ii) has a “place of business” in this State ~~that~~ as that term is defined by rule under  
5 Section 203A of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 and is not a “supervised person” as that  
6 term is defined in Section 202(a)(25) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940; or

7 (D) who, the administrator, by rule or order, specifies.

## 8 **Comments**

### 9 **Source of Law:** New

10 1. Investment adviser representatives were not required to register under the federal  
11 Investment Advisers Act, before or after the National Securities Markets Improvement Act.

12  
13 2. Investment adviser representative is defined under Section 203A of the Investment  
14 Advisers Act of 1940 in Rule 203A-3(a).

15  
16 3. This definition of investment adviser representative includes third party solicitors with a  
17 place of business in a state who receives compensation to solicit on behalf of federal covered  
18 investment advisers, but are not supervised persons of the federal covered investment advisers.

19  
20 ~~(17) “Issuer” means a person or group of persons that issues or proposes to issue its own  
21 securities, subject to the following:~~

22 ~~(A) The issuer of a collateral trust certificate, voting trust certificate, certificate of  
23 deposit for a security, or share in an investment company without a board of directors or persons  
24 performing similar functions, is the person performing the acts and assuming the duties of  
25 depositor or manager under the trust or other agreement or instrument under which the security is  
26 issued.~~

27 ~~(B) The issuer of an equipment trust certificate, including a conditional sales contract  
28 or similar security serving the same purpose, is the person or the person’s parent to whom the~~

1 ~~equipment or property is or is to be leased or conditionally sold.~~

2 ~~(C) The issuer of a fractional undivided interest in oil, gas, or other mineral rights is~~  
3 ~~the owner of an interest in the lease or in payments out of production under a lease, right, or~~  
4 ~~royalty, whether whole or fractional, who creates fractional interests for the purpose of sale.~~

5 *(17) “Issuer” means a person that issues or proposes to issue a security, [including a*  
6 *guarantor in whole or in part of payments on the security,] subject to the following rules:*

7 *(A) The issuer of a voting trust certificate, certificate of deposit for a security, or*  
8 *share in an investment company without a board of directors or individuals performing similar*  
9 *functions, is the person performing the acts and assuming the duties of depositor or manager*  
10 *pursuant to the trust or other agreement or instrument under which the security is issued.*

11 *(B) The issuer of a collateral trust certificate, equipment trust certificate, or similar*  
12 *security serving the same purpose is the person by whom the property is or is to be used, or to*  
13 *whom the property or equipment is or is to be leased or conditionally sold, or who is otherwise*  
14 *contractually responsible for assuring payment of the certificate.*

15 *(C) The issuer of a fractional undivided interest in oil, gas, or other mineral rights is*  
16 *the owner of an interest in a lease, right, or royalty, or in payments out of production under a*  
17 *lease, right, or royalty, whether whole or fractional, that creates fractional interests for the*  
18 *purpose of [public] offering.*

## 19 **Comments**

20 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 401(g); RUSA Section 101(8).

21 In the suggested revision the term “collateral trust certificate” is inserted in paragraph (B) on  
22 equipment trust certificates to which it seems to better relate. The language of the rest of  
23 paragraph (A) does not seem to apply to a collateral trust certificate. Indeed, while collateral  
24 trust certificates are referred to in the definition of “security” in Section 102(29), equipment trust  
25 certificates are not (the same is true in the federal act), one would think because an equipment  
26 trust certificate is a variation of a collateral trust certificate.

1 It should be pointed out that this would be different from the definitional treatment of  
2 “issuer” in the federal Securities Act, which is the same as in our current inclusion of collateral  
3 trust certificates in paragraph (A).  
4

5 2. With respect to deletion from paragraph (B) of the phrase “including a conditional sales  
6 contract,” a conditional sales contract is not a security and when a conditional sales contract is  
7 the basis of an equipment trust certificate, it runs only to the trustee. It does not appear in the  
8 federal act’s treatment of equipment trust certificates. That the conditional sale purchaser is the  
9 issuer is picked up in the rest of paragraph (B).  
10

11 3. In paragraph (B), “or the person’s parent” is deleted. This does not appear in the federal  
12 statute. The parent may or may not be an issuer. It would depend upon the deal. Where the  
13 issuer railroad, for example, is not creditworthy, the parent holding company may have to  
14 guarantee the certificates or the lease or conditional sale contract to the trustee, in which case the  
15 parent would or should also become an issuer. It is not either/or. And that would be consistent  
16 with federal law which treats a guarantor of a security or the means of payment of a security as an  
17 issuer.  
18

19 4. In paragraph (B), insertion of “or who is otherwise contractually responsible for assuring  
20 payment of the certificate:” This is to take care of other forms of payment than leases or  
21 conditional sales contracts. It would also reach guarantors.  
22

23 5. Insertion of “[, including a guarantor in whole or in part of payments on the security”]: In  
24 order to pick up a guarantor, which relates to the whole definition of issuer, and because a  
25 guarantor may be a subsidiary or a sibling company as well as a parent, or even an unrelated  
26 party, there is inserted in the lead-in to the definition of these bracketed materials.  
27

28 a. “In whole or in part” is added after “guaranteed”, because “guaranteed” in Section  
29 102(10) is defined to mean “guaranteed as to payment of all principal and all interest”. That  
30 definition was drafted with its usage in the exemption provisions in mind. A guarantor of part of  
31 an obligation that is being publicly sold, however, can and should be treated as an issuer with an  
32 issuer’s responsibility. That also would be consistent with federal law.  
33

34 b. Guaranteeing “payments on the security” is used rather than simply guaranteeing the  
35 security in order to include, for example, a guarantee of payment of the lease or conditional sale  
36 obligation underlying an equipment trust certificate that is the means of payment of the  
37 certificate.  
38

39 c. The insertion is bracketed, because it may be unnecessary. It does not appear in the  
40 definition of issuer in the federal act. The treatment of guarantors has developed as a matter of  
41 SEC practice.  
42

43 6. In paragraph (C), “an oil, gas, or other mineral lease or in payments out of production  
44 under a lease, right, or royalty” is deleted and “oil, gas, or other mineral rights” is substituted: the  
45 latter phrasing is used in the definition of “security” in Section 102(29). It is also the phrasing  
46 used in the federal act’s definition of security and issuer. The reference to lease, production

1 payment, right or royalty is picked up in the balance of paragraph (C).

2  
3 (18) “Nonissuer transaction” or “nonissuer distribution” means a transaction or  
4 distribution not directly or indirectly for the benefit of the issuer.

5 (19) “Offer to purchase” includes every attempt to obtain or solicit an “offer to sell” a  
6 security or interest in a security for value, ~~but~~ The term does not include a tender offer that is  
7 subject to ~~sub~~section 14(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

### 8 **Comments**

9 A rescission offer under Section 510 would be an offer to purchase.

10  
11 (20) “Person” means an individual, corporation, business trust, estate, trust, partnership,  
12 limited liability company, association, joint venture, government; governmental subdivision,  
13 agency, or instrumentality; public corporation; or any other legal or commercial entity.

14 (21) “Place of business” of a broker-dealer, ~~or~~ an investment adviser or a federal covered  
15 investment adviser means:

16 (A) an office at which the broker-dealer, ~~or~~ investment adviser, or federal covered  
17 investment adviser regularly provides brokerage or investment advisory services, ~~or~~ solicits,  
18 meets with, or otherwise communicates with clients; or

19 (B) any other location that is held out to the general public as a location at which the  
20 broker-dealer, ~~or~~ investment adviser, or federal covered investment adviser provides brokerage or  
21 investment advisory services, ~~or~~ solicits, meets with, or otherwise communicates with clients.

### 22 **Comments**

23 **Source of Law:** Rules 203A-3(b) and 222-1 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940.  
24  
25

1 (22) “Predecessor act” means the Act repealed ~~under~~ *by* Section 702.

2 (23) “Price amendment” means the amendment to a registration statement filed under the  
3 Securities Act of 1933 or, if no amendment is filed, the prospectus or prospectus supplement  
4 filed under the Securities Act of 1933 that includes a statement of the offering price,  
5 underwriting and selling discounts or commissions, amount of proceeds, conversion rates, call  
6 prices, and other matters dependent upon the offering price.

7 (24) “Principal place of business” of a broker-dealer or an investment adviser means the  
8 executive office of the broker-dealer or investment adviser from which the officers, partners, or  
9 managers of the broker-dealer or investment adviser direct, control, and coordinate the activities  
10 of the broker-dealer or investment adviser.

11 **Comments**

12 **Source of Law:** Rule 222-1(b) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940.

13  
14 (25) “Record,” except in “of record,” “official record,” and “public record,” means  
15 information that is inscribed on a tangible medium or that is stored in an electronic or other  
16 medium and is retrievable in perceivable form. ~~including, but not be limited to, a registration  
17 statement, report, application, book, publication, account, paper, correspondence, memorandum,  
18 agreement, document, computer file, microfilm, photograph, audio or visual tape, and any other  
19 writing.~~

20  
21 **Comments**

22 **Source of Law:** Uniform Electronic Transactions Act Section 2(13).

23 1. This subsection would include, but not be limited to, a registration statement, report,  
24 application, book, publication, account, paper, correspondence, memorandum, agreement,  
25 document, computer file, microfilm, photograph, audio or visual tape, and any other writing.

1 2. The Uniform Electronic Transactions Act §2(13) defines record in nearly identical terms.

2  
3 The Official Comment explains:

4  
5 This is a standard definition designed to embrace all means of communicating or  
6 storing information except human memory. It includes any method for storing or  
7 communicating information, including “writings.” A record need not be  
8 indestructible or permanent, but the term does not include oral or other  
9 communications which are not stored or preserved by some means.

10  
11 3. This term is intended to embrace new forms of records that are created or popularized in  
12 the future.

13  
14  
15 (26) “Sale” includes every contract of sale, contract to sell, or disposition of, a security or  
16 interest in a security for value, and “offer to sell” includes every attempt or offer to dispose of, or  
17 solicitation of an offer to buy, a security or interest in a security for value. Both terms:

18 (A) include:

19 (i) security given or delivered with, or as a bonus on account of, any purchase of  
20 securities or any other thing constituting part of the subject of the purchase and ~~to have~~ having  
21 been offered and sold for value;

22 (ii) a gift of assessable stock involves an offer and sale; and

23 (iii) a sale or offer of a warrant or right to purchase or subscribe to another  
24 security of the same or another issuer, and every sale or offer of a security that gives the holder a  
25 present or future right or privilege to convert into another security of the same or another issuer,  
26 including an offer of the other security; and

27 (B) do not include:

28 (i) the creation of a security interest in conjunction with a loan;

29 (ii) a stock dividend, whether the corporation distributing the dividend is the  
30 issuer of the stock or not, if nothing of value is given by stockholders for the dividend other than  
31 the surrender of a right to a cash or property dividend if each stockholder may elect to take the

1 dividend in cash, property, or stock;

2 (iii) an act incident to a judicially approved reorganization in which a security is  
3 issued in exchange for one or more outstanding securities, claims, or property interests, or partly  
4 in such exchange and partly for cash; and

5 (iv) the solicitation of tenders of securities by an offeror in a tender offer in  
6 compliance with Rule 162 issued under the Securities Act of 1933.

## 7 **Comments**

8 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 401(j); RUSA Section 101(13).

9 **QUERY:** Should Section 102(26)(B)(i) be clarified to refer to bona fide commercial loans  
10 given the Reves case holding that some notes are securities. Similarly should Section  
11 102(26)(B)(ii) refer to bona fide stock dividends to address spinoff transactions? Pennsylvania  
12 urges yes.

13  
14 1. Both the 1956 Act and RUSA definition of “sale” are modeled on Section 2(a)(3) of the  
15 Securities Act of 1933.

16  
17 2. Language in Section 401(j) of the 1956 Act also addressed the now rescinded SEC “no  
18 sale” doctrine and has been eliminated. Merger transactions are usually sales under Section  
19 102(26), but may be exempted from the securities registration requirements by Section 202(16).

20  
21 3. Securities Act Rule 162 allows the offeror in a stock exchange offer to solicit tenders of  
22 securities before a registration statement is effective as long as no securities are purchased until  
23 the registration statement is effective and the tender offer has expired.

24  
25  
26  
27 (27) “Securities Act of 1933” (15 U.S.C.A. Section 77a et seq.), “Securities Exchange  
28 Act of 1934” (15 U.S.C. Section 78a et seq.), “Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935,”(15  
29 U.S.C. Section 79 et seq.), “Investment Company Act of 1940” (15 U.S.C. Section 80a-1 et seq.),  
30 “Investment Advisers Act of 1940” (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.), “Employee Retirement  
31 Income Security Act of 1974,” (29 U.S.C. Section 1001 et seq.) “National Housing Act,” (12  
32 U.S.C. Section 1701 et seq.), “Commodity Exchange Act” (7 U.S.C. Section 1 et seq.), “Internal  
33 Revenue Code” (26 U.S.C. Section 1 et seq.); Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act of

1 1998 (112 Stat. 3227); “Small Business Investment Act of 1958” (15 U.S.C. Section 66 et seq.);  
2 and “Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act,” (15 U.S.C. Section 7001 et.  
3 seq.), mean the federal statutes of those names, and the rules and regulations under these  
4 statutes, as in effect on the effective date of this [Act], [or as later amended].

## 5 **Comments**

6 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 401(k); RUSA Section 101(15).

7 1. There are a large number of references to other laws in this Act, particularly to the federal  
8 securities laws identified in Section 102(27) and to rules adopted by the Securities and Exchange  
9 Commission under those laws. This is because one of the main objectives of this revision of a  
10 uniform state regulatory statute is to take account of those provisions in the federal laws that are  
11 preemptive, and to coordinate with other, nonpreemptive provisions of the federal laws where  
12 coordination between federal and state securities regulators is the public interest.

13  
14 2. Section 12(d) of the Uniform Statute and Rule Construction Act, adopted by NCCUSL in  
15 1995 and enacted in one State, provides: “A statute or rule that incorporates by reference a statute  
16 or rule of another jurisdiction does not incorporate a later enactment or adoption or amendment  
17 of the other statute or rule.” Nevertheless, some States permit later amendments to statutes and  
18 rules referenced in enacted legislation to become automatically effective.

19  
20 3. After enactment amendments to a preemptive federal statute, to an amendment of such a  
21 statute that maintains the preemption, to rules adopted by a federal agency under a preemptive  
22 provision of a federal statute or to amendments to such rules should be enforced in all states  
23 under the Supremacy Clause of the United States Constitution. A number of such references are  
24 in this Act.

25  
26  
27  
28 (28) “Securities and Exchange Commission” means the United States Securities and  
29 Exchange Commission.

30 (29) “Security” means a note; stock; treasury stock; security future; bond; debenture;  
31 evidence of indebtedness; certificate of interest or participation in a profit-sharing agreement;  
32 collateral trust certificate; preorganization certificate or subscription; transferable share;  
33 investment contract; voting trust certificate; certificate of deposit for a security; viatical  
34 settlement contracts; fractional undivided interest in oil, gas, or other mineral rights; put, call,

1 straddle, option, or privilege on a security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities,  
2 (including an interest therein or based on the value thereof); put, call, straddle, option or  
3 privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency; or, in  
4 general, an interest or instrument commonly known as a “security”; or a certificate of interest or  
5 participation in, temporary or interim certificate for, receipt for, guarantee of, or warrant or right  
6 to subscribe to or purchase, any of the foregoing. The term includes both a certificated and  
7 uncertificated security. The term does not include:

8 (A) an insurance or endowment policy or annuity contract under which an insurance  
9 company promises to pay a fixed *[or variable]* sum of money either in a lump sum or  
10 periodically for life or other specified period; or

11 (B) an interest in a contributory or noncontributory pension or welfare plan subject to  
12 the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974.

13 (30) “Self-regulatory organization” means a national securities exchange registered under the  
14 Securities Exchange Act of 1934, a national securities association of broker-dealers registered  
15 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, a clearing agency registered under the Securities  
16 Exchange Act of 1934, or the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board established under the  
17 Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

18 (31) “Sign” means:

19 (A) to execute or adopt a tangible symbol with the present intent to authenticate a record;

20 or

21 (B) to attach or logically associate an electronic symbol, sound, or process to or with a  
22 record with the present intent to authenticate the record.

23 (31~~2~~) “State” means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the  
24 United States Virgin Islands, or any territory or insular possession subject to the jurisdiction of

1 the United States.

2 (323) “Underwriter” means a person that has purchased from an issuer with a view to, or  
3 offers or sells for an issuer in connection with, the distribution of ~~any~~ a security; participates or  
4 has a direct or indirect participation in an undertaking; or participates or has a participation in the  
5 direct or indirect underwriting of an undertaking. The term does not include a person whose  
6 interest is limited to a commission from an underwriter or dealer not in excess of the usual and  
7 customary distributors’ or sellers’ commission. *In this paragraph, “issuer” includes a person*  
8 *directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by the issuer, and a person under direct or*  
9 *indirect common control with the issuer.*

## 10 **Comments**

11 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 401; RUSA 101.

12 1. Under Section 605(a) the administrator has the power to define by rule any term, whether  
13 or not used in this Act, as long as the definitions are not inconsistent with the Act.

14 2. All definitions include corresponding meanings. For example, “filing” would include  
15 “file” or “filed”; “sale” would include “sell.”  
16

17 3. Prefatory Phrase: “When used in this Act, unless the context otherwise requires”: Prior  
18 Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401 Preface; RUSA Section 101 Preface. This prefatory phrase  
19 which begins the counterpart provisions of the federal securities statutes, see, e.g., Securities Act  
20 of 1933 Section 2(a), provides the basis for the courts to take into account the statutory and  
21 factual context of each definition, see, e.g., *Reves v. Ernst & Young*, 494 U.S. 56 (1990); 2 L.  
22 *Loss & J. Seligman, Securities Regulation 927-929* (3d ed. rev. 1999), and will allow the courts  
23 to harmonize these definitions with the counterpart federal securities definitions to the extent  
24 appropriate. Cf. *Akin v. Q-L Inv., Inc.*, 959 F.2d 521, 532 (5th Cir. 1992) (“Texas courts  
25 generally look to decisions of the federal courts to interpret the Texas Securities Act because of  
26 obvious similarities between the state and federal laws”); *Koch v Koch Indus., Inc.* 203 F.3d  
27 1202, 1235 (10th Cir. 2000) (following federal definition of materiality); *Biales v. Young*, 432  
28 S.E.2d 482, 484 (S.C. 1993) (“Section 35-1-1490(2) is substantially similar to Section 12(1) of  
29 the Federal Securities Act”).  
30

31 4. Section 102(1): Administrator: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401(a); RUSA  
32 Section 101(1).  
33

34 5. Section 102(2): Agent: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401(b); RUSA Section  
35 101(14).  
36

1 Section 102(2), in part, follows the 1956 Act definitions. The 1956 Act used the term  
2 “agent” while the RUSA Section 101(14) used the term “sales representative.” Given the  
3 broader enactment of the 1956 Act, this Act also uses the term “agent.”  
4

5 Whether a particular individual who represents a broker-dealer or issuer is an “agent”  
6 depends upon the same factors that create an agency relationship at common law. See, e.g.,  
7 *Norwest Bank Hastings v. Clapp*, 394 N.W.2d 176, 179 (Minn. Ct. App. 1986) (following  
8 Official Comment that establishing agency under the Uniform Securities Act “depends upon  
9 much the same factors which create an agency relationship at common law”) *Shaughnessy &*  
10 *Co., Inc. v. Commissioner of Sec.*, 1971-1978 Blue Sky L. Rep. (CCH) ¶71,348 (Wis. Cir. Ct.  
11 1977) (unlicensed person who took information relevant to securities transaction and turned it  
12 over to securities agents was himself an agent).  
13

14 An individual can be an agent for a broker-dealer or issuer for a purpose other than effecting  
15 or attempting to effect purchases or sales of securities and not be a statutory agent under this Act.  
16 See, e.g., *Baker, Watts & Co. v. Miles & Stockridge*, 620 A.2d 356, 367 (Md. Ct. App. 1993)  
17 (attorney-client relationship is generally one of agency, but that alone does not bring attorneys  
18 within securities act definition of agent).  
19

20 Section 102(2) is intended to include any individual who acts as an agent, whether or not the  
21 individual is an employee or independent contractor.  
22

23 The term “individual” is limited to human beings and does not include a juridical “person”  
24 such as a corporation. Cf. definition of “person” in Section 102(20). The 1956 Act Section  
25 401(b) similarly was limited to individuals and did not include juridical persons. See, e.g.,  
26 *Connecticut Nat’l Bank v. Giacomi*, 699 A.2d 101, 111-112 (Conn. 1997) (“agent” only includes  
27 natural persons when it used the term individual); *Schpok v. Fodale*, 236 N.W.2d 97, 99 (Mich.  
28 Ct. App. 1975) (agent defined to be individual which did not under the statute include a  
29 corporation).  
30

31 An individual will not be considered to be an agent under Section 102(2) merely because of  
32 the person’s status as a partner, officer, or director of a broker-dealer or issuer if such an  
33 individual does not effect or attempt to effect purchases or sales of securities. See, e.g., *Abell v.*  
34 *Potomac Ins. Co.*, 858 F.2d 1104 (5th Cir. 1988). See also *Norwest Bank Hastings v. Clapp*, 394  
35 N.W.2d 176, 178-179 (Minn. Ct. App. 1986) (lender was not an agent). Cf. *Quick v. Woody*,  
36 747 S.W.2d 108 (Ark. 1988).  
37

38 An individual whose functions are solely clerical or ministerial would not be an agent under  
39 Section 102(2).  
40

41 Section 102(2)(B) provides with respect to individuals acting for an issuer, a parent of the  
42 issuer, or subsidiary of the issuer, including a partner, officer, or director, that such individual  
43 will not be an “agent” when such an individual acts for an issuer with respect to an offering or  
44 sale of the issuer’s securities, a parent, or subsidiary when (1) such an individual primarily  
45 performs duties other than in connection with transactions in the issuer’s own securities and (2)  
46 the individual does not receive compensation based, in whole or in part, upon sales of the issuer’s  
47 own securities. Similar provisions exist in some states today. See, e.g., Colorado Section  
48 201(14); Illinois Securities Act Section 2.9.

1 An individual acting for an issuer subject to Section 102(2)(B) will not be exempted from  
2 relevant fraud and liability provisions in Part 5.

3  
4 6. Section 102(3): Bank: This Subsection is substantively identical to Subsection 3(a)(6) of  
5 the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. A United States branch of a foreign bank that otherwise  
6 satisfies this definition would be a bank.

7  
8 7. Section 102(4): Broker-Dealer: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401(c); RUSA  
9 Section 101(2). This definition generally follows the definition of broker-dealer in the 1956 Act  
10 and RUSA.

11  
12 The use of the compound term is meant to include either a broker or a dealer. The recognized  
13 distinction is that a broker acts for the benefit of another while a dealer acts for itself (e.g., in  
14 buying for or selling from its own inventory).

15  
16 The distinction between “a person engaged in the business of effecting transactions in  
17 securities” and an investor, who may buy and sell with some frequency and is outside the scope  
18 of this term, has been well developed in the case law. See 6 L. Loss & J. Seligman, Securities  
19 Regulation 2980-2984 (3d ed. 1990).

20  
21 The 1956 Act Section 401(c) excluded from the definition of broker-dealer a person who  
22 during any 12 consecutive months did not direct more than 15 offers to buy or sell in this State.  
23 In this Act exemptions from broker-dealer registration are provided in Section 401(b).

24  
25 The Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, signed into law in November 1999, rescinded the exemption  
26 of banks from the definition of broker and dealer in Sections 3(a)(4) and (5) of the Securities  
27 Exchange Act of 1934. Under Section 102(4)(D), a securities administrator can exclude banks  
28 and other depository institutions, in whole or in part. There is also an exemption in Section  
29 401(b)(2) for bank registration as a broker-dealer for specified activities.

30  
31 Section 15(h)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended by the National  
32 Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996 preempts state law from “[establishing] capital,  
33 custody, margin, financial responsibility, making and keeping records, bonding, or financial or  
34 operational reporting requirements for brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, government  
35 securities brokers, or government securities dealers that differ from, or are in addition to the  
36 requirements in those areas established under [the Securities Exchange Act].” These  
37 preemptions are recognized in the substantive broker-dealer provisions in Part 4.

38  
39 8. Section 102(6): Federal covered investment adviser: No Prior Provision. This provision  
40 is necessitated by Section 203A of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, added by Title III of the  
41 National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996, which allocates to primary state  
42 regulation most advisers with assets under management of less than \$25 million. SEC  
43 registration is permitted, but not required, for investment advisers having between \$25 and \$30  
44 million of assets under management and is required of investment advisers having at least \$30  
45 million of assets under management. Investment Advisers Act of 1940 Rule 203A-1. Most  
46 advisers with assets under management of \$25 million or more register solely under Section 203  
47 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 and not state law. This division of labor is intended to  
48 eliminate duplicative regulation of investment advisers.

1 9. Section 102(7): Federal covered security: No Prior Provision. The National Securities  
2 Markets Improvement Act of 1996, as subsequently amended, partially preempted state law in  
3 the securities offering and shareholder reporting areas. Under Section 18(a) of the Securities Act  
4 of 1933, no state statute, rule, order, or other administrative action may apply to:  
5

6 (1) The registration of a “covered” security or a security that will be a covered security upon  
7 completion of the transaction;  
8

9 (2)(A) Any offering document prepared by or on behalf of the issuer of a covered security;  
10

11 (2)(B) Any proxy statement, report to shareholders, or other disclosure document relating to a  
12 covered security or its issuer that is required to be filed with the SEC or any national securities  
13 association registered under Section 15A of the Securities Exchange Act such as the National  
14 Association of Securities Dealers (NASD); or  
15

16 (3) The merits of a covered security or a security that will be a covered security upon  
17 completion of the transaction.  
18

19 2. Section 18(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 applies to four types of “covered securities”:  
20

21 (1) Securities listed or authorized for listing on the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), the  
22 American Stock Exchange (Amex); the National Market System of the Nasdaq stock market; or  
23 securities exchanges registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) (or any tier  
24 or segment of their trading) if the SEC determines by rule that their listing standards are  
25 substantially similar to those of the NYSE, Amex, or Nasdaq National Market System, which the  
26 SEC has done through Rule 146; and any security of the same issuer that is equal in seniority or  
27 senior to any security listed on the NYSE, Amex, Nasdaq National Market System, or other  
28 applicable securities exchange;  
29

30 (2) Securities issued by an investment company registered with the SEC (or one that has filed  
31 a registration statement under the federal Investment Company Act of 1940);  
32

33 (3) Securities offered or sold to “qualified purchasers.” This category of covered securities  
34 will become operational only when the SEC defines the term “qualified purchaser” as used in  
35 Section 18(b)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933, by rule, which to date it has not done; and  
36

37 (4) Securities issued under the following specified exemptions of the Securities Act of 1933:  
38

39 (A) Sections 4(1) (transactions by persons other than an issuer, underwriter or dealer), and  
40 4(3) (dealers after specified periods of time), but only if the issuer files reports with the  
41 Commission under Sections 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act;  
42

43 (B) Section 4(4) (brokers);  
44

45 (C) Securities Act exemptions in Section 3(a) with the exception of the charitable exemption  
46 in Section 3(a)(4), the exchange exemption in Section 3(a)(10), the intrastate exemption in  
47 Section 3(a)(11), and the municipal securities exemption in Section 3(a)(2), but only with  
48 “respect to the offer or sale of such [municipal] security in the State in which the issuer of such

1 security is located”; and

2  
3 (D) Securities issued in compliance with SEC rules under Section 4(2) (private placement  
4 exemption).

5  
6 Section 18(c)(1) preserves state authority “to investigate and bring enforcement actions with  
7 respect to fraud or deceit, or unlawful conduct by a broker or dealer, in connection with securities  
8 or securities transactions.”

9  
10 The National Securities Markets Improvement Act, in essence, preempts aspects of the  
11 securities registration and reporting processes for specified covered securities. The Act does not  
12 diminish state authority to investigate and bring enforcement actions generally with respect to  
13 securities transactions.

14  
15 The states are also authorized to require filings of any document filed with the SEC for notice  
16 purposes “together with annual or periodic reports of the value of securities sold or offered to be  
17 sold to persons located in the State (if such sales data is not included in documents filed with the  
18 Commission), solely for notice purposes and the assessment of any fee, together with a consent  
19 to service of process and any required fee.” Section 18(c)(2). However, no filing or fee may be  
20 required with respect to any listed security that is a covered security under Section 18(b)(1)  
21 (traded on specified stock markets). Section 302 of this Act addresses notice filings and fees  
22 applicable to federal covered securities.

23  
24 9. Section 102(8): Filing: Prior Provision: RUSA Section 101(4). The RUSA definition  
25 was revised to recognize that records may be filed in paper form or electronically with the  
26 administrator, or designees such as the Web-CRD (Central Registration Depository) or Investor  
27 Advisor Registration Depository (IARD) or successor institutions or the Securities and Exchange  
28 Commission’s Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval System (EDGAR) or successor  
29 systems.

30  
31 In the RUSA definition, the term “filed” referred to “actual delivery of a document or  
32 application.” This Act substitutes the term “record” which is defined in Section 102(25) to refer  
33 broadly to “information that is inscribed on a tangible medium or that is stored in an electronic or  
34 other medium and is retrievable in perishable form”. This definition requires the receipt of a  
35 record. The definition does not limit filing to any specific medium such as mail, certified mail,  
36 or a particular electronic system. The definition is intended to permit an administrator to accept  
37 filings over the Internet or through a direct modem system, both of which are now used to  
38 transmit documents to EDGAR, or through new electronic systems as they evolve.

39  
40 “Receipt” refers to the actual delivery of a record to the administrator or a designee and does  
41 not refer to a subsequent review of the record by the administrator. See, e.g., *Fehrman v. Blunt*,  
42 825 S.W.2d 658 (Mo. Ct. App. 1992).

43  
44 10. Section 102(9): Fraud, Deceit and Defraud: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401(d);  
45 RUSA Section 101(6). This definition, which is identical to the 1956 Act and RUSA, codifies  
46 the holdings that “fraud” as used in the federal and state securities statutes is not limited to  
47 common law deceit. See generally 7 L. Loss & J. Seligman, *Securities Regulation* 3421-3448  
48 (3d ed. 1991).

1 11. Section 102(10): Guaranteed: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401(e); RUSA  
2 Section 401(a)(1). The 1956 Act definition of “guaranteed” applied generally to payment of  
3 “principal, interest, or dividends.” The RUSA definition of “guaranteed,” which was solely  
4 applicable to exempt securities, applied to the guarantee of “all or substantially all of principal  
5 and interest or dividends.”  
6

7 Section 102(10) follows the 1956 Act approach and applies generally to the guarantee of “all  
8 principal and all interest.” Any method of guarantee that results in a guarantee of payment of all  
9 principal and all interest will suffice including, for example, an irrevocable letter of credit.  
10

11 This definition does not address whether or not a guarantee, whether whole or partial, is itself  
12 a security. That issue is addressed by the definition of “security” in Section 102(29).  
13

14 12. Section 102(12): Insurance company: No Prior Provision. This definition is based on  
15 Securities Act of 1933 Section 2(a)(13).  
16

17 13. Section 102(13): Insured: Prior Provision: RUSA Section 401(a)(2). The RUSA  
18 definition of “insured,” which was solely applicable to exempt securities, applied to the insurance  
19 of “all or substantially all of principal, interest, or dividends.” Section 102(13) is applicable  
20 generally but is limited to “payment of all principal and all interest.”  
21

22 14. Section 102(14): International bank: No Prior Provision. Securities issued or  
23 guaranteed by the Internal Bank for Reconstruction and Development, 22 U.S.C. Section 286k-  
24 1(a); the Inter-American Development Bank, 22 U.S.C. Section 283h(a); the Asian Development  
25 Bank, 22 U.S.C. Section 285h(a); the African Development Bank, 22 U.S.C. Section 290i-9; and  
26 the International Finance Corporation, see 22 U.S.C. Section 282k; are treated as exempted  
27 securities within the meaning of Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933, see generally 3 L.  
28 Loss & J. Seligman, Securities Regulation 1191-1194 (3d ed. rev. 1999), and are within this  
29 term.  
30

31 15. Section 102(15): Investment adviser: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401(f); RUSA  
32 Section 101(7). This term generally follows the definition in Section 202(a)(11) of the  
33 Investment Advisers Act of 1940.  
34

35 The first sentence in Section 102(15) is identical to the first sentence in the 1956 Act Section  
36 401(f) and the counterpart language in Section 202(a)(11). The RUSA definition deleted the  
37 phrases “either directly or through publications or writings” and “regular” before business.  
38 These terms have been returned to Section 102(15) because of the intention that this definition be  
39 construed uniformly with the definition in the Investment Advisers Act of 1940. See Section  
40 612.  
41

42 The second sentence in the term addressing financial planners is new. The purpose of this  
43 sentence is to achieve functional regulation of those financial planners who, in fact, satisfy the  
44 definition of investment adviser. Cf. Investment Advisers Act Release 1092, 39 SEC Dock. 494  
45 (1987) (similar approach in Securities and Exchange Commission interpretative Release). This  
46 reference is not intended to preclude persons who hold some form of formally recognized  
47 financial planning or consulting designation or certification from using this designation. The use  
48 by a person of the designation or certification as a financial planner or any designation or

1 certification alone does not require registration as an investment adviser.

2  
3 Sections 102(15)(A)-(G) are exclusions from the term “investment adviser.” An excluded  
4 person can be held liable for fraud in providing investment advice, see Section 502, but would  
5 not be subject to the registration and regulatory provisions in Part 4.

6  
7 Sections 102(15)(A) and (E) are new and recognize that investment adviser representatives  
8 and federal covered investment advisers are separately treated in this Act. See definitions in  
9 Sections 102(6) and 102(16); registration and exemptions in Sections 404-405.

10  
11 Sections 102(15)(B), (C), and (G) are substantively identical to the 1956 Act, RUSA, and the  
12 Investment Advisers Act of 1940. The Official Comment to 1956 Act Section 401(f) quoted an  
13 opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission General Counsel in Investment Advisers  
14 Act Release 2 on the meaning of “special compensation” included in Section 102(15)(C):

15  
16 [This clause] amounts to a recognition that brokers and dealers commonly  
17 give a certain amount of advice to their customers in the course of their regular  
18 business, and that it would be inappropriate to bring them within the scope of the  
19 Investment Advisers Act merely because of this aspect of their business. On the  
20 other hand, that portion of clause [(3)] which refers to ‘special compensation’  
21 amounts to an equally clear recognition that a broker or dealer who is specially  
22 compensated for the rendition of advice should be considered an investment  
23 adviser and not be excluded from the purview of the Act merely because he is also  
24 engaged in effecting market transactions in securities. . . . The essential  
25 distinction to be borne in mind in considering borderline cases . . . is the  
26 distinction between compensation for advice itself and compensation for services  
27 of another character to which advice is merely incidental.

28  
29 The 1956 Act definition added the word “paid” to the counterpart exclusion in Section  
30 202(a)(11) of the Investment Advisers Act “to emphasize,” as the Official Comment explained,  
31 “that a person who periodically distributes a ‘tipster sheet’ free as a way to get paying clients is  
32 not excluded from the definition as a ‘publisher.’” After the 1956 Act was published, the United  
33 States Supreme Court construed the definition of investment adviser in *Lowe v. SEC*, 472 U.S.  
34 181 (1985), and concluded:

35  
36 Congress did not intend to exclude publications that are distributed by investment  
37 advisers as a normal part of the business of servicing their clients. The legislative  
38 history plainly demonstrates that Congress was primarily interested in regulating  
39 the business of rendering personalized investment advice, including publishing  
40 activities that are a normal incident thereto. On the other hand, Congress, plainly  
41 sensitive to First Amendment concerns, wanted to make clear that it did not seek  
42 to regulate the press through the licensing of nonpersonalized publishing  
43 activities.

44  
45 *Id.* at 185.

46  
47 Responsive to this language RUSA rewrote this exclusion to provide:  
48

1 a publisher, employee, or columnist of a newspaper, news magazine, or business  
2 or financial publication, or an owner, operator, or employee of a cable, radio, or  
3 television network, station, or production facility, if, in either case, the financial or  
4 business news published or disseminated is made available to the general public  
5 and the content does not consist of rendering advice on the basis of the specific  
6 investment situation of each client.  
7

8 Recent experience at the federal and state levels suggest that the RUSA approach may be too  
9 broad. The retention of the Investment Advisers Act approach provides a better balance between  
10 First Amendment concerns and protection of investors from non-“bona fide” publicizing of  
11 investment advice. The exclusion in Section 102(15)(D) is intended to exclude publishers of  
12 Internet or electronic media, but only if the Internet or electronic media publication or website  
13 satisfies the “bona fide” and “publication of general, regular, and paid circulation” requirements.  
14 Cf. SEC v. Park, 99 F. Supp. 2d 889, 895-896 (N.D. Ill. 2000) (court declined to dismiss  
15 complaint against an Internet website when there were allegations that the website was not “bona  
16 fide” or of “general and regular circulation”).  
17

18 The exclusion in Section 102(15)(F) is required by the National Securities Markets  
19 Improvement Act of 1996. This exclusion will reach banks and bank holding companies as  
20 described in Investment Advisers Act Section 202(a)(11)(A) and persons whose advice solely  
21 concerns United States government securities as described in Section 202(a)(11)(E).  
22

23 16. Section 102(18): Nonissuer transaction or nonissuer distribution: Prior Provisions:  
24 1956 Act Section 401(h); RUSA Section 101(9). This definition is relevant to several exempt  
25 transactions in Section 202. See, e.g., Sections 202(1)-(7).  
26

27 In *TechnoMedical Labs, Inc. v. Utah Sec. Div.*, 744 P.2d 320 (Utah Ct. App. 1987), the court  
28 declined to limit the term benefit to monetary benefit and instead held a spinoff transaction could  
29 provide direct or indirect benefits to an issuer. *Id.* at 323-324, *following* SEC v. *Datronics*  
30 *Eng’r, Inc.*, 490 F.2d 250 (4th Cir. 1973), *cert. denied*, 416 U.S. 937; SEC v. *Harwin Indus.*  
31 *Corp.*, 326 F. Supp. 943 (S.D.N.Y. 1971).  
32

33 17. Section 102(20): Person: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401(i); RUSA Section  
34 101(10). This is the standard definition used by the National Conference of Commissioners for  
35 Uniform State Laws. The use of the concluding phrase “or any other legal or commercial entity”  
36 is intended to be broad enough to include other forms of business entities that may be created or  
37 popularized in the future.  
38

39 18. Section 102(23): Price amendment: Prior Provision: RUSA Section 101(11). This  
40 concept concerns the registration by coordination with the Securities and Exchange Commission  
41 procedure in Section 303(d). See also Section 304(d). In the case of noncash offerings, required  
42 information concerning such matters as the offering price and underwriting arrangements is  
43 normally filed in a “price” amendment after the rest of the registration statement has been  
44 reviewed by the Securities and Exchange Commission staff. See generally 1 L. Loss & J.  
45 Seligman, *Securities Regulation* 542-550 (3d ed. rev. 1998).  
46

47 19. Section 102(29): Security: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401(1); RUSA Section  
48 101(16). Much of the definition in Section 102(29), like the definitions in the 1956 Act Section

1 401(l) and RUSA Section 101(16), is identical to the definition in Section 2(a)(1) of the  
2 Securities Act. State courts interpreting the Uniform Securities Act definition of security have  
3 often looked to interpretations of the federal definition of security. See generally 2 L. Loss & J.  
4 Seligman, Security Regulation 923-1138.19 (3d ed. rev. 1999).

5  
6 The most recent amendments to Section 2(a)(1) of the Securities Act of 1933 were added by  
7 the Commodities Futures Modernization Act of 2000 which added or revised language  
8 addressing securities futures and securities puts, calls, straddles, options, or privileges to the  
9 federal act. Identical language has been included in Section 102(29) of this Act to harmonize  
10 interpretation of the federal and state definition of a “security.” See Section 613.

11  
12 Section 102(29) includes the exception from RUSA to the 1956 definition for “an interest in  
13 a contributory or noncontributory pension or welfare plan subject to the Employee Retirement  
14 Income Security Act of 1974.” Section 102(29) also uses RUSA’s “fractional undivided interest  
15 in oil, gas or other mineral rights” formulation, which originated in Section 2(a)(1) of the  
16 Securities Act of 1933, rather than the 1956 Act formulation, “certificate of interest or  
17 participation in an oil, gas or mining title.” In recent years, courts interpreting Section 2(a)(1) of  
18 the Securities Act of 1933 have found certain oil, gas or mineral rights to be investment contracts  
19 (that is, securities). 2 L. Loss & J. Seligman, Securities Regulation 979-982 (3d ed. rev. 1999).

20  
21 Preorganization certificates or subscriptions are included in this term, obviating the need for a  
22 separate definition as in RUSA Section 402(13).

23  
24 A new sentence was added referring to certificated or uncertificated securities to indicate that  
25 the term is intended to apply whether or not a security is evidenced by a writing.

26  
27 Under federal securities law certain limited liability companies and limited partnerships have  
28 been held to be investment contracts and accordingly “securities” within the meaning of Section  
29 2(a)(1) of the Securities Act of 1933. See 2 L. Loss & J. Seligman, Securities Regulation 1028-  
30 1031 (3d ed. rev. 1999). In addition, when consistent with the court decisions interpreting the  
31 investment contract concept, see, e.g., SEC v. W.J. Howey Co., 328 U.S. 293 (1946), such  
32 instruments as limited liability partnerships or viatical settlements could also be statutory  
33 securities. This term is intended to reject the holding that a viatical contract would never be a  
34 security. See SEC v. Life Partners Inc., 87 F.3d 536 (D.C. Cir. 1996), *reh’g denied*, 102 F. 3d  
35 587 (D.C. Cir. 1996).

36  
37 Insurance or endowment policies or endowments or annuity contracts, other than those on  
38 which an insurance company promises to make variable payments are excluded from this term.  
39 Variable insurance products are also excluded in many states and are exempted from securities  
40 registration in others under provisions such as Section 201(4). When variable products are  
41 included in the definition of security and exempted from registration state securities  
42 administrators can bring enforcement actions concerning variable insurance sales practices.

43  
44 20. Section 102(30): Self-regulatory organization: Prior Provision: RUSA Section 101(17).  
45 This definition was added by RUSA and is based on a counterpart provision in the Federal  
46 Securities Code. At the current time national securities exchanges are required under Section 6  
47 of the Securities Exchange Act; national securities associations under Section 15A; clearing  
48 agencies are registered under Section 17A; and the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board

1 under Section 15B.

2  
3 21. Section 102(32): State: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 401(m); RUSA Section  
4 101(18). This is the standard definition used by the National Conference of Commissioners on  
5 Uniform State Laws. It does include territories and possessions of the United States, as well as  
6 the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico, but does not include foreign governments, their  
7 territories, or their possessions.

8  
9 22. Section 102(33): Underwriter: No Prior Provision. The definition in Section 102(33) is  
10 intended to be construed consistently with the definition of underwriter in Section 2(a)(11) of the  
11 Securities Act of 1933.

12  
13  
14  
15 **[SECTION 103 ELECTRONIC RECORDS AND SIGNATURES.** ~~The provisions of this~~  
16 ~~[Act] governing the legal effect, validity, or enforceability of electronic records or signatures, and~~  
17 ~~of contracts formed or performed with the use of such records or signatures conform to the~~  
18 ~~requirements of Section 102 of the Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act,~~  
19 ~~and supersede, modify, and limit the Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce~~  
20 ~~Act.] This [Act] modifies, limits, or supersedes the federal Electronic Signatures in Global and~~  
21 ~~National Commerce Act, but this [Act] does not modify, limit, or supersede Section 101(c) of~~  
22 ~~that Act or authorize electronic delivery of any of the notices described in Section 103(b) of that~~  
23 ~~Act.~~

## 24 **Comments**

25 **Prior Provision:** Uniform Electronic Transactions Act (1999).

26 1. Section 102 of the Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act, expressly  
27 allows a state statute, regulation, or other rule of law to permit electronic transactions “only if  
28 such statute, regulation, or other rule of law . . . constitutes an enactment or adoption of the  
29 Uniform Electronic Transactions Act.”

30  
31 2. The Uniform Electronic Transactions Act, Section 4 “applies to any electronic record or  
32 electronic signature created, generated, sent, communicated, received, or stored on or after the  
33 effective date of [that Act].” The Act “applies only to transactions between parties each of which  
34 has agreed to transactions by electronic means,” section 5(b), but in those cases is intended “to  
35 facilitate electronic transactions consistent with other applicable law.” Section 6(1). Specifically  
36 Section 7 provides:

1 (a) A record or signature may not be denied legal effect or enforceability  
2 solely because it is in electronic form.

3  
4 (b) A contract may not be denied legal effect or enforceability solely because  
5 an electronic record was used in its formation.

6  
7 (c) If a law requires a record to be in writing, an electronic record satisfies the  
8 law.

9  
10 (d) If a law requires a signature, an electronic signature satisfies the law.  
11  
12

1  
2  
3 **ARTICLE 2**  
4 **EXEMPTIONS FROM REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES**

5 **Comments**

6 Section 201 includes exempt securities and Section 202 includes exempt transactions. Both  
7 exempt securities and exempt transactions are exempt from the securities registration and the  
8 filing of sales literature sections of this Act. Neither Section 201 nor Section 202 provide an  
9 exemption from the Act's antifraud provisions in Article 5, nor the broker-dealer, agent,  
10 investment adviser, or investment adviser registration requirements in Article 4.

11  
12 A Section 201 exempt security retains its exemption when initially issued and in subsequent  
13 trading.

14  
15 A Section 202 transaction exemption must be established before each transaction.

16  
17 Neither the exempt security nor the transaction exemptions are meant to be mutually  
18 exclusive. A security or transaction may qualify for two or more of these exemptions.

19  
20  
21 **SECTION 201. EXEMPT SECURITIES.** The following securities are exempt from  
22 Sections 301, 303 through 306 and 504:

23 (1) [**United States government and municipal securities.**] a security, including a  
24 revenue obligation or a separate security as defined in a rule under the Securities Act of 1933,  
25 issued, insured, or guaranteed by the United States; by a State; by a political subdivision of a  
26 State; by a public authority, agency, instrumentality of one or more States; by a political  
27 subdivision of one or more States; by a person controlled or supervised by and acting as an  
28 instrumentality of the United States under authority granted by the Congress; or a certificate of  
29 deposit for any of the foregoing;

30 (2) [**Foreign government securities.**] a security issued, insured, or guaranteed by a  
31 foreign government with which the United States maintains diplomatic relations, or any of its  
32 political subdivisions, if the security is recognized as a valid obligation by the issuer, insurer, or  
33 guarantor;

1 (3) [**Depository institution and international bank securities.**] a security issued by and  
2 representing or that will represent an interest in or a direct obligation of, or be guaranteed by, a  
3 depository institution or by an international bank;

#### 4 **Comments**

5 **Source of Law:** RUSA Section 401(b)(3).

6 1. Section 402(a)(3) of the 1956 Act exempts specified bank and similar depository  
7 institutions; Section 402(a)(4) exempts specified savings and loan and similar thrift institution  
8 securities; and Section 402(a)(6) exempts specified credit union securities. RUSA Section  
9 401(b)(3) combines the three types of depository institutions into a common definition (see  
10 RUSA Section 101(13) which are adopted here as Sections 102(3) and 102(5)) and a common  
11 exemption (see RUSA Section 401(b)(3) which is adopted in this Section).  
12

13 2. Banks specified in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933 issue federal covered  
14 securities under Section 18(b)(4)(C) of the Securities Act of 1933.  
15  
16  
17

18 (4) [**Insurance company securities.**] a security issued by and representing an interest in  
19 or a debt of, or insured or guaranteed by, an insurance company authorized to do business in this  
20 State;

21 (5) [**Public utility securities.**] a security issued or guaranteed by a railroad, other  
22 common carrier, public utility, or holding company that is:

23 (A) a holding company registered under the Public Utility Holding Company Act of  
24 1935 or a subsidiary of a registered holding company within the meaning of that Act;

25 (B) regulated in respect to its rates and charges by the United States or a State; or

26 (C) regulated in respect to the issuance or guarantee of the security by the United  
27 States, a State, Canada, or a Canadian province or territory;

28 (6) [**Certain options and rights.**] a put or call option contract, warrant, or subscription  
29 right on or with respect to a federal covered security specified in Section 18(b)(1) of the  
30 Securities Act of 1933 or by rule under that provision or a security listed or approved for listing

1 on another appropriate securities market specified by rule by the administrator under this [Act];  
2 or an option [or similar derivative security] on a security or an index of securities or foreign  
3 currencies issued by a clearing agency registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and  
4 listed or designated for trading on a national securities exchange, a facility of a national securities  
5 exchange, or a facility of a national securities association registered under the Securities  
6 Exchange Act of 1934 [or an offer or sale of the underlying security in connection with the offer,  
7 sale or exercise of an option or other security that was exempt under this section at the time such  
8 option or other security was written or issued. For purposes of this paragraph, a derivative  
9 security is similar to an option if it has been designated ~~in Rule 9b-1 under~~ by the Securities and  
10 Exchange Commission under Section 9(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934];

11 (7) [**Nonprofit organization securities.**] a security issued by a person organized and  
12 operated exclusively for religious, educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, social, athletic,  
13 or reformatory purposes or as a chamber of commerce and not for pecuniary profit, no part of the  
14 net earnings of which inures to the benefit of a private stockholder or person, or a security of a  
15 company that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under Section  
16 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, but not including a note, bond, debenture,  
17 or evidence of indebtedness unless the administrator, by rule or order, so specifies under Section  
18 203;

### 19 **Comments**

20 **Source of Law:** Sec. Act Section 3(a)(4).

21 1. Section 402(a)(9) of the 1956 Act and Section 401(b)(10) of RUSA exempt specified  
22 nonprofit securities. Both are modeled on Section 3(a)(4) of the Securities Act, which was  
23 subsequently amended.

24  
25 2. Section 3(a)(4) is not treated as a federal covered security in Section 18(b)(4)(C), although  
26 a separate Section 3(a)(13) exemption which addresses certain church plan securities is a federal  
27 covered security under Section 18(b)(4)(C).

1 3. RUSA also included an optional notice and review requirement for nonprofit securities in  
2 Section 401(b)(10) “if at least ten days before a sale of the security the person has filed with the  
3 administrator a notice setting forth the material terms of the proposed sale and copies of any sales  
4 and advertising literature to be used and the administrator by order does not disallow the  
5 exemption within the next five full business days.” As of June 2001, 49 jurisdictions included a  
6 nonprofit organization exemption. Of these 13 included a statutory notice filing requirements.  
7 See Ala. Section 8-6-10(8); District of Columbia Section 2-2664.1(8); Iowa Section 502.202(9);  
8 Kansas Section 17-1261(h); Md. Section 11-601(9)(ii); Mich. Section 451.8031(a)(8)(A); Mo.  
9 Section 409.402(a)(9); Mont. Section 30-10-104(8); Nev. Section 90.520(j); N.M. Section 58-  
10 13B-26H; N.D. Section 10-04-05.5; Okla. Section 401(a)(6); Tenn. Section 48-2-103(a)(7);  
11 Wash. Section 21.20.310 (11). In addition North Carolina authorizes its administrator “by rule or  
12 order [to] impose conditions, upon this exemption either generally or in relation to specific  
13 securities or transactions.”  
14

15 4. This exemption is of particular concern to state securities administrators. See, e.g., State  
16 Regulators Announce Dramatic Rise in Religious Scams; Tens of Thousands Lured, 33 Sec.  
17 Reg. & L. Rep. (BNA) 1189 (2001). Robert M. Lam, Chairman of the Pennsylvania Securities  
18 Commission, wrote the Reporter on November 30, 1999:  
19

20 Of all the changes that have occurred at the State level, the rise of the market  
21 of debt securities of non-profit organizations has been the most significant and  
22 troublesome. . . .  
23

24 5. The Denominational Investment and Loan Administrators on April 20, 2001, proposed  
25 adding to subsection 201(7):  
26

27 *[except that this exemption does not include a note, bond, debenture or evidence of*  
28 *indebtedness unless at least ten days before a sale of the security the person has filed*  
29 *with the administrator a notice setting forth the material terms of the proposed sale and*  
30 *copies of any sales and advertising literature to be used and the administrator by order*  
31 *does not disallow the exemption within the next five full business days]*  
32

33 The Denominational Investment and Loan Administrators explained:  
34

35 a. Except for the optional text, this exemption parallels the 1933 Act  
36 nonprofit exemption, which creates uniformity in treatment at the state and federal  
37 levels.  
38

39 b. The optional text recognizes that some states have expressed concern with  
40 nonprofit debt offerings and provides these states the option of requiring an  
41 exemption filing. The optional text is based upon the nonprofit exemption in  
42 RUSA §401(b)(10).  
43

44 c. This exemption is consistent with current state treatment of nonprofit  
45 securities offerings. The vast majority of states today provide either an exemption  
46 or an exemption with filing for some or all nonprofit offerings. Only about eight  
47 states require registration of all nonprofit offerings.  
48

1 6. With respect to the exclusion of an investment company under subsection 3(c)(10)(B) of  
2 the Investment Company Act, the Pennsylvania Securities Commission further states:  
3

4 Funds excluded from the definition of investment company under Section  
5 3(c)(10) of the 1940 Act include pooled income funds, collective trust funds and  
6 collective investment funds maintained for collective investment assets of general  
7 endowment funds, assets of pooled income funds, assets exchanged for issuance  
8 of charitable gift annuities, assets of charitable remainder trusts, assets of a  
9 charitable lead trust and assets of trusts with remainder interests dedicated to  
10 charitable organizations (“Charitable Funds”).  
11

12 Under Section 6 of the federal Philanthropy Protection Act, Congress  
13 preempted application of the registration provisions of state securities laws to  
14 issuance of securities of Charitable Funds unless states acted within three years of  
15 enactment (December 1998) to pass special state legislation cancelling federal  
16 preemption. Ten states passed such legislation (AR, CT, FL, MD, MS, NE, PA,  
17 TN, VT, VA).  
18

19 To the extent that any security issued by Charitable Funds would not  
20 constitute an evidence of indebtedness and be excluded from the exemption, [this]  
21 Draft presents a major issue of 20% of the states whose legislatures, as permitted  
22 by Congress, enacted specific legislation to retain jurisdiction over these  
23 securities.  
24

25 The minority of states that did adopt legislation to cancel federal preemption may delete the  
26 phrase “or a security of a company that is excluded from the definition of an investment company  
27 under Section 3(c)(10) of the Investment Company Act of 1940.”  
28  
29

30 (8) [**Cooperatives.**] a member’s or owner’s interest in, or a retention certificate or like  
31 security given in lieu of a cash patronage dividend issued by, a cooperative organized and  
32 operated as a nonprofit membership cooperative under the cooperative laws of a State, but not a  
33 member’s or owner’s interest, retention certificate, or like security sold to persons other than  
34 bona fide members of the cooperative; ~~and unless the administrator adopts a rule or issues an~~  
35 ~~order under Section 203;~~

36 (~~10~~ 9) [**Equipment trust certificates.**] an equipment trust certificate in respect to  
37 equipment leased or conditionally sold to a person, if securities issued by the person would be  
38 exempt under this section or would be federal covered securities under Section 18(b)(1) of the

1 Securities Act of 1933.

## 2 **Comments**

3 1. Section 201(1): United States government and municipal securities: Prior Provisions:  
4 1956 Act Section 402(a)(1); RUSA Section 401(b)(1). This exemption generally follows the  
5 1956 Act except that it adds securities “insured” by a relevant government to those “issued” or  
6 “guaranteed.” RUSA, in contrast, also addressed foreign governments, which in this Act are  
7 treated separately in Section 201(2). Rule 131 issued under the Securities Act of 1933 defines  
8 securities issued under governmental obligations and is referenced by the phrase, “[a] security,  
9 including a revenue obligation or a separate security as that form is defined in a rule under the  
10 Securities Act of 1933.”

11  
12 2. Section 201(2): Foreign government securities: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section  
13 402(a)(2); RUSA Section 401(b)(2). The 1956 Act, as amended, and RUSA both reached  
14 foreign governments as specified in Section 201(2) and separately treated “a security issued,  
15 insured, or guaranteed by Canada, a Canadian province or territory, a political subdivision of  
16 Canada or a Canadian province or territory, an agency or corporate or other instrumentality of  
17 one or more of the foregoing.” The separate treatment of Canadian securities is largely  
18 redundant and has been eliminated from this Section.

19  
20 3. Section 201(4): Insurance company securities: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section  
21 402(a)(5); RUSA Section 401(b)(4). The issuance, insurance, or guarantee of securities by an  
22 insurance company is extensively regulated by state insurance commissions or other state  
23 agencies.

24  
25 Under this Act insurance or endowment policies or annuity contracts under which an  
26 insurance company promises to pay fixed sums are excluded from the definition of a security in  
27 Section 102(29).

28  
29 A variable annuity or other variable insurance product would be considered a security under  
30 this Act and under federal securities law. See *SEC v. Variable Annuity Life Ins. Co. of Am.*, 359  
31 U.S. 65 (1959); *SEC v. United Benefit Life Ins. Co.*, 387 U.S. 202 (1967).

32  
33 A variable annuity or other variable insurance product issued by an investment company  
34 registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under the Investment Company Act of  
35 1940 would be a “federal covered security,” see Section 102(7), and subject to the notice filing  
36 requirements of Section 302. *Landford v. Hartford Life & Annuity Ins. Co.*, 251 F.3d 101 (2d  
37 Cir. 2001).

38  
39 A variable annuity or other variable insurance product not issued by a registered investment  
40 company would be exempted by Section 201(4), but would be subject to the antifraud provisions  
41 in Article 5.

42  
43 4. Section 201(5): Public utility securities: Prior Provisions securities: 1956 Act Section  
44 401(a)(7); RUSA Section 401(b)(5). Both the 1956 Act and RUSA include references, omitted  
45 here, to the Interstate Commerce Commission, whose enabling legislation subsequently was  
46 repealed. Public utilities covered by this exemption are subject both to the federal Public Utility

1 Holding Company Act and to state utility regulation.  
2

3 5. Section 201(6): Certain options and rights: No Prior Provision. The 1956 Act Section  
4 402(a)(8) provided an exemption for securities listed on the New York, American, Midwest (now  
5 Chicago), or other stock exchanges, senior or substantially equal securities of the same issuer,  
6 and any security called for by listed or approved subscription rights or warrants, or any warrant or  
7 right to purchase or subscribe to any security exempted by Section 402(a)(8).  
8

9 RUSA essentially retained this exemption in Section 401(b)(7) and added securities  
10 designated for inclusion in the National Market System by the National Association of Securities  
11 Dealers in Section 401(b)(8) and specified options issued by a clearing agency registered under  
12 the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 in Section 401(b)(9).  
13

14 In 1996 Congress enacted the National Securities Markets Improvement Act and provided in  
15 Section 18(b)(1) that securities listed on the New York, American or Nasdaq Stock Exchange, or  
16 designated by rule of the Securities and Exchange Commission, as well as any security of the  
17 same issuer that is equal in seniority or senior to any of these securities will be a federal covered  
18 security. Under Rule 146 the SEC has designated as federal covered securities under Section  
19 18(b)(1) Tier I of the Pacific Exchange; Tier I of the Philadelphia Stock Exchange; and The  
20 Chicago Board Options Exchange on condition that the relevant listing standards continue to be  
21 substantially similar to those of the New York, American, or Nasdaq stock exchanges. See  
22 Reporter's Note to Section 102(7).  
23

24 A federal covered security subject to Section 18(b)(1) of the Securities Act of 1933 will not  
25 be subject to the securities registration requirements of Sections 301 and 303 through 306.  
26

27 The exemption in Section 201(6) addresses specified options, warrants, and rights that are not  
28 federal covered securities under Section 18(b)(1) of the Securities Act of 1933, but generally  
29 would have been exempted under RUSA. The 1956 Act, which was narrower, was drafted  
30 before the computerized Nasdaq Stock Exchange began trading the National Market List and the  
31 development of standardized options markets.  
32

33 The bracketed language in Section 201(6) was proposed by the Options Clearing Corporation  
34 after our last Drafting Committee meeting. The final clause of the exemption makes clear that  
35 any offer or sale of the underlying security that occurs as a result of the offer or sale of an option  
36 or other derivative security exempted under this provision or as the result of the exercise of the  
37 option or other derivative security, is covered by the exemption if the option met the terms of the  
38 exemption at the time such derivative security was written (sold) or issued. The sale of the  
39 underlying security when an option is exercised would be exempt even if the underlying security  
40 is not at that time subject to any exemption under the Act. This is consistent with existing  
41 precedent under federal law suggesting that the legality of the sale of an underlying security when  
42 exercised an option should be determined by the status of the security at the time the option was  
43 written rather than at the time of exercise. See, e.g., *H. Kook & Co., Inc. v. Scheinman, Hochstin  
44 & Trotta, Inc.*, 414 F.2d 93 (2d Cir. 1969). Any transaction in an underlying security that results  
45 from the offer, sale or exercise of any derivative security issued by a registered clearing agency  
46 and traded on a national securities exchange or association is exempt if the derivative security  
47 when written was exempt under Section 201(6).  
48

1 The Securities and Exchange Commission has adopted Rule 9b-1 under Section 9(b).

2  
3 6. Section 201(8): Cooperatives: Prior Provision: RUSA Section 401(b)(13). Section  
4 201(8) is derived from RUSA Section 401(b)(13) which was included in that Act after a number  
5 of states had adopted exemptions for securities issued by cooperatives. Section 201(8) is not  
6 intended to be available if securities are traded to the public generally.  
7

8 The 1956 Act Section 402(a)(12) had instead provided: “insert any desired exemption for  
9 cooperatives.” The reporter of the 1956 Act had found such sharp variation among the 18 states  
10 that then had adopted a cooperative exemption that “no common pattern can be found.” L. Loss,  
11 Commentary on the Uniform Securities Act 118 (1976).  
12

13 7. Section 201(9): Equipment trust certificates: Prior Provision: RUSA Section 401(b)(6).  
14 The Securities Act of 1933 Section 3(a)(6) includes a narrower exemption for railroad equipment  
15 trusts.  
16

17 The Official Comment to RUSA Section 401(b)(6) explained:

18  
19 The new paragraph (b)(6) reflects the extensive development of  
20 equipment lease financing through leveraged leases, conditional  
21 sales, and other devices. The underlying premise is that if the  
22 securities of the person using such a financing device would be  
23 exempt under some other paragraph of Section 401, the equipment  
24 trust certificate or other security issued to acquire the property in  
25 question also is exempt.  
26  
27  
28

29 **SECTION 202. EXEMPT TRANSACTIONS.** The following transactions are exempt  
30 from Sections 301, 303 through 306, and 504:

31 (1) [**Isolated nonissuer transactions.**] an isolated nonissuer transaction, whether  
32 effected through a broker-dealer or not;

33 (2) [**Nonissuer transactions in specified outstanding securities.**] a nonissuer  
34 transaction by a registered agent of a registered broker-dealer, and a resale transaction by a  
35 sponsor of a unit investment trust registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940, in a  
36 security of a class that has been outstanding in the hands of the public for at least 90 days [or  
37 rated by a nationally recognized statistical rating organization in one of its four highest generic  
38 rating categories]; if, at the time of the transaction:

1 (A) the issuer of the security is engaged in business, is not in the organization stage or in  
2 bankruptcy or receivership, and is not a blank check, blind pool, or shell company whose primary  
3 plan of business is to engage in a merger or combination of the business with, or an acquisition  
4 of, an unidentified person ~~or persons~~;

5 (B) the security is sold at a price reasonably related to the current market price of the  
6 security;

7 (C) the security does not constitute the whole or part of an unsold allotment to or a  
8 subscription or participation by, the broker-dealer as an underwriter of the security or a  
9 redistribution; and

10 (D) a nationally recognized securities manual or its electronic equivalent designated by  
11 rule or order of the administrator under this [Act] or a record filed with the Securities and  
12 Exchange Commission which is publicly available contains:

13 (i) a description of the business and operations of the issuer;

14 (ii) the names of the issuer's executive officers and the names of the issuer's  
15 directors, if any;

16 (iii) an audited balance sheet of the issuer as of a date within 18 months or, in the case  
17 of a reorganization or merger where the parties to the reorganization or merger had the audited  
18 balance sheet, a pro forma balance sheet;

19 (iv) an audited income statement for each of the issuer's immediately preceding two  
20 fiscal years or for the period of existence of the issuer, whichever is shorter, or, in the case of a  
21 reorganization or merger where the parties to the reorganization or merger had the audited  
22 income statement, a pro forma income statement; and

23 (v) the issuer of the security has a class of equity securities listed on a national  
24 securities exchange registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or designated for

1 trading on the National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotation System, unless  
2 the issuer of the security is a unit investment trust registered under the Investment Company Act  
3 of 1940; *or* the issuer of the security, including its predecessors, have been engaged in  
4 continuous business for at least three years; or the issuer of the security has total assets of at least  
5 \$2,000,000 based on an audited balance sheet as of a date within 18 months or, in the case of a  
6 reorganization or merger where the parties to the reorganization or merger had the audited  
7 balance sheet, a pro forma balance sheet;

8 (3) **[Nonissuer transactions in specified foreign securities.]** a nonissuer transaction [in an  
9 equity security] [a security] of a foreign issuer that is a margin security defined in regulations or  
10 rules adopted by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System;

11 (4) **[Nonissuer transactions in securities subject to Securities Exchange Act reporting.]**  
12 a nonissuer transaction in an outstanding security if the issuer or the guarantor of the security  
13 files reports with the Securities and Exchange Commission under the reporting requirements of  
14 Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [and any nonissuer transaction in an  
15 outstanding security of a consolidated subsidiary of the reporting issuer];

16 (5) **[Nonissuer transactions in specified fixed income securities.]** a nonissuer transaction in  
17 a security that has a fixed maturity or a fixed interest or dividend, if:

18 (A) there has not been a default during the current fiscal year or within the three next  
19 preceding years or during the existence of the issuer and any predecessor if less than three years,  
20 in the payment of principal, interest, or dividends on the security; and

21 (B) the issuer is engaged in business, is not in the organization stage or in bankruptcy or  
22 receivership, and is not or has not been within the past 12 months a blank check, blind pool, or  
23 shell company whose primary plan of business is to engage in a merger or combination of the  
24 business with, or an acquisition of, an unidentified person ~~or persons~~;

1 (6) [**Unsolicited brokerage transactions.**] a nonissuer transaction by or through a broker-  
2 dealer registered under this [Act] effecting an unsolicited order or offer to purchase;

3 (7) [**Nonissuer transactions by pledgees.**] a nonissuer transaction executed by a bona fide  
4 pledgee without any purpose of evading this [Act];

5 (8) [**Underwriter transactions.**] a transaction between the issuer or other person on whose  
6 behalf the offering is made and an underwriter, or among underwriters;

7 (9) [**Unit secured transactions.**] a transaction in a note, bond, debenture, or other evidence  
8 of indebtedness secured by a real or chattel mortgage or deed of trust or by an agreement for the  
9 sale of real estate or chattels, if each mortgage, deed of trust, or agreement, together with all the  
10 notes, bonds, debentures, or other evidences of indebtedness secured thereby, is offered and sold  
11 as a unit, and there is no general solicitation or general advertisement of the transaction, and a  
12 commission or other remuneration is not paid to a person not registered under this [Act] as a  
13 broker-dealer or as an agent;

#### 14 **Comments**

15 The ABA opposes the limitations on general solicitation or general advertisement and  
16 commissions and would return to the original language of the 1956 Act exemption.  
17  
18

19 (10) [**Bankruptcy, guardian, or conservator transactions.**] a transaction by an  
20 executor, administrator of an estate, sheriff, marshal, receiver, trustee in bankruptcy, guardian, or  
21 conservator;

22 (11) [**Transactions with institutional investors.**] an offer or sale to one or more of the  
23 following:

24 (A) an institutional investor;

25 {B) a federal covered investment adviser acting for its own account}; or

26 (C) any other person the administrator, by rule or order, specifies;

1 **Comments**

2 **Source of Law:** New.

3 1. The 1956 Act contains similar but less inclusive language in Section 402(b)(8).

4  
5 2. Section 202(11)(B) is limited to transactions for the account of a federal covered  
6 investment adviser and is not intended to reach transactions on behalf of others.

7  
8 3. If the SEC adopts a rule defining “qualified purchaser” as used in Section 18(b)(3) of the  
9 Securities Act to specify certain purchasers of federal covered securities, part or all of this  
10 exemption may prove redundant.

11  
12  
13  
14 (12) [**Limited offering transactions.**] a transaction under an offer to sell securities of an  
15 issuer, if the transaction is part of an issue in which:

16 (A) there are no more than ~~10~~ [25] purchasers in this State [and no more than 50  
17 purchasers, wherever located.] during any 12 consecutive months, other than those designated in  
18 Rule 501(a) under the Securities Act of 1933 and in paragraph (11);

19 (B) general solicitation or general advertising is not used in connection with the offer  
20 to sell or sale of the securities;

21 (C) a commission or other remuneration is not paid or given to a person, other than a  
22 broker-dealer or agent registered under this [Act], for soliciting a prospective purchaser in this  
23 State; and

24 (D) ~~either the seller reasonably believes that all the purchasers in this State other than~~  
25 ~~those designated in Rule 501(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 and in paragraph (11) are~~  
26 ~~purchasing for investment; or, immediately before and immediately after the transaction, the~~  
27 ~~issuer reasonably believes that the equity securities of the issuer are held by a total of 50 or fewer~~  
28 ~~beneficial owners, wherever located, other than those designated in Rule 501(a) under the~~  
29 ~~Securities Act of 1933 and in paragraph (11) and the transaction is part of an aggregate offering~~

1 ~~that does not exceed [\$1,000,000] during any 12 consecutive months;~~

## 2 **Comments**

3 **Source of Law:** RUSA Section 402(11); 1956 Act Section 402(b)(9).

4  
5 1. Section 402(b)(9) of the 1956 Act and Section 402(11) of the 1985 Act provide alternative  
6 limited offering transaction exemptions. The 1956 Act was limited to offers to no more than ten  
7 persons (other than institutional investors specified in Section 402(b)(8)); all purchasers in the  
8 State had to purchase for investment; and no remuneration was given for soliciting prospective  
9 purchasers in the State. The 1985 Act, in contrast, was limited to no more than 25 purchasers  
10 (other than financial or institutional investors); no general solicitation or advertising; and no  
11 remuneration was paid to a person other than a broker-dealer for soliciting a prospective  
12 purchaser.

13  
14 2. This Section would apply to preorganization limited offerings as well as operating  
15 company limited offerings. The Securities Act of 1933 Sections 3(b) and 4(2) also apply to both.  
16 In contrast, the 1956 Act Section 402(b)(10) and RUSA Section 402(12) use similar concepts in  
17 separate Sections to apply to preorganization limited offerings.

18  
19 3. Section 18(b)(4)(D) of the Securities Act of 1933 defines as federal covered securities  
20 those issued under Securities and Exchange Commission rules under Section 4(2) of the  
21 Securities Act. This would include Rule 506, which uses the “accredited investor” definition in  
22 Rule 501(a). When a transaction involves Rule 506, Section 18(b)(4)(D) further provides “that  
23 this paragraph does not prohibit a state from imposing notice filing requirements that are  
24 substantially similar to those required by rule or regulation under Section 4(2) that are in effect  
25 on September 1, 1996.” These notice requirements are found in Section 302(c) of this Act.

26  
27 4. A majority of states have adopted a Uniform Limited Offering Exemption, coordinate to  
28 varying degrees with Regulation D. The authority to adopt this and other exemptive rules is  
29 provided in Section 203.

30  
31  
32  
33 (13) [**Transactions with existing security holders.**] a transaction under an offer to  
34 existing security holders of the issuer, including persons who at the time of the transaction are  
35 holders of convertible securities, options, or warrants, if a commission or other remuneration,  
36 other than a standby commission, is not paid or given directly or indirectly for soliciting a  
37 security holder in this State;

38 (14) [**Offerings when registered under this [Act] and the Securities Act of 1933.**] an  
39 offer to sell, but not a sale, of a security not exempt from registration under the Securities Act of

1 1933 if:

2 (A) a registration or offering statement or similar record as required under the  
3 Securities Act of 1933 has been filed but is not effective or the offer is made in compliance with  
4 Rule 165 under the Securities Act of 1933; and

5 (B) no stop order of which the offeror is aware has been entered against the offeror by  
6 the administrator or the Securities and Exchange Commission, and no examination or  
7 proceeding that is public and may culminate in a stop order is known by the offeror to be  
8 pending;

9 (15) **[Offerings when registered under this [Act] and exempt from the Securities Act**  
10 **of 1933.]** an offer to sell, but not a sale, of a security exempt from registration under the  
11 Securities Act of 1933 if:

12 (A) a registration statement has been filed under this [Act], but is not effective;

13 (B) a solicitation of interest is provided in a record to offerees in compliance with a  
14 rule adopted by the administrator under this [Act]; and

15 (C) no stop order of which the offeror is aware has been entered by the administrator,  
16 and no examination or proceeding that may culminate in that kind of order is known by the  
17 offeror to be pending; ~~and~~

## 18 **Comments**

19 **Source of Law:** RUSA Section 402(16).

20 1. A solicitation of interest document must accompany a registration by qualification as  
21 specified in Section 304(b)(13).

22  
23 2. Oral offers may be made after a registration statement has been filed, both before and after  
24 a registration statement is effective.

25  
26  
27  
28 (16) **[Control transactions.]** a transaction involving the distribution of the securities of

1 an issuer to the security holders of another person in connection with a merger, consolidation,  
2 exchange of securities, sale of assets, or other reorganization to which the issuer, or its parent or  
3 subsidiary, and the other person, or its parent or subsidiary, are parties;

4 (17) [**Rescission Offers.**] a rescission offer under ~~subsection 509(k)~~ *Section 510*; and

5 [(18) [**Out-of-state offers or sales.**] an offer or sale of a security to a person not a  
6 resident of in this State and not present in this State if the offer or sale does not violate a  
7 securities registration requirement or its equivalent in the laws of the jurisdiction in which the  
8 other person is located and is not made for the purpose of evading this [Act].] and is registered  
9 or exempt from registration in the other state.]

10 (19) [**Employee benefit plans.**] a security issued in connection with an employees' stock  
11 purchase, savings, option, profit-sharing, pension, or similar employees' benefit plan, including  
12 any securities, plan interests, and guarantees issued under a compensatory benefit plan or  
13 compensation contract, contained in a record, established by the issuer, its parents, its majority-  
14 owned subsidiaries, or the majority-owned subsidiaries of the issuer's parent for the  
15 participation of their employees; insurance agents who ~~is~~ are the exclusive agents of the issuer,  
16 its subsidiaries or parents, or who derives more than 50 percent of the agents' annual income  
17 from those entities; directors; general partners; and trustees if the issuer is a business trust;  
18 officers; consultants and advisors; and their family members who acquire the securities from  
19 such persons by gift or pursuant to a domestic relations order; and securities issued in connection  
20 with the employee benefit plans to former employees, directors, general partners, trustees,  
21 officers, consultants, and advisors, but only if these persons were employed by or providing  
22 services to the issuer at the time the securities were offered.

### 23 **Comments**

24 1. Sections 202(1)-(7) are available only for nonissuer transactions. An issuer selling

1 securities in an initial public offering or other offering may not rely on Sections 202(1)-(7). A  
2 nonissuer, however, can rely on an applicable issuer transaction exemption such as Section  
3 202(11). The term “nonissuer transaction or nonissuer distribution” is defined in Section  
4 102(18); the term “issuer” is defined in Section 102(17).  
5

6 2. Section 202(1): Isolated nonissuer transactions: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section  
7 402(b)(1); RUSA Section 402(1). The term “isolated transaction” is not defined in this Act, but  
8 left to the states to develop. Historically under state law there has been somewhat varied case  
9 law development of the term “isolated transactions.” See e.g., *Blinder, Robinson & Co., Inc. v.*  
10 *Goetsch*, 403 N.W.2d 772 (Iowa 1987) (isolated nonissuer transaction exemption is not  
11 unconstitutionally vague); *Allen v. Schauf*, 449 P.2d 1010 (Kan. 1969) (regulation defined  
12 isolated transactions to not exceed four persons solicited in a 12 month period); *Nelson v. State*,  
13 355 P.2d 413, 420 (Okla. Ct. Crim. App. 1960) (“[a]n isolated sale means one standing alone,  
14 disconnected from any other”); see generally 1 L. Loss & J. Seligman, *Securities Regulation* 125-  
15 130 (3d ed. rev. 1998).  
16

17 In general this subsection is intended to cover the occasional sale by a person. It would not  
18 exempt multiple or successive transactions by a person or group, whether those be sufficient to  
19 constitute a “distribution” as that term is used for purposes of the federal securities laws, see 2 L.  
20 Loss & J. Seligman, *Securities Regulation* 1138.50-1138.52 (3d ed. rev. 1999), or merely too  
21 frequent to be considered “isolated” under the relevant state law.  
22

23 Limited issuer offering transactions are separately addressed in Section 202(12).  
24

25 3. Section 202(2): Nonissuer transactions in specified outstanding securities: Prior  
26 Provisions: 1956 Act Section 402(b)(2); RUSA Sections 402(3)-(4).  
27

28 This Section represents a modernization of the securities manual exemption which was  
29 included in both the 1956 Act and RUSA. NASAA adopted an amendment to the 1956 Act  
30 Section 402(b) after discussions with the Securities Industry Association and others in the  
31 securities industry. This Section generally follows the NASAA amendment.  
32

33 Rule 419 issued under the Securities Act of 1933 defines a “blank check company” to be a  
34 company that “is a development state company that has no specific business plan or purpose or  
35 has indicated that its business plan is to engage in a merger or acquisition with an unidentified  
36 company or companies, or other entity or person. A “blind pool” is similar and would involve an  
37 investment in a blank check or other entity with no identified business plan or purpose. A “shell  
38 company” is also similar and would involve an entity which, to date, has no specific business  
39 assets, plan, or purpose.  
40

41 4. Section 202(3): Nonissuer transactions in specified foreign transactions: No Prior  
42 Provision. The NASAA amendment that was the basis of Section 202(2) also included specified  
43 foreign nonissuer transactions subject to a manual exemption when there was disclosure of the  
44 issuer’s officers and directors in the issuer’s country of domicile. This subsection uses margin  
45 securities as an alternative approach to identify sufficiently seasoned foreign securities. Margin  
46 securities are required to be in compliance with Regulation T which was adopted by the Board of  
47 Governors of the Federal Reserve System.  
48

1           5. Section 202(4): Nonissuer transactions in securities subject to Securities Exchange Act  
2 reporting: Prior Provision: RUSA Section 402(2). RUSA added this exemption to authorize  
3 nonissuer secondary trading in the securities of issuers that were subject to the periodic reporting  
4 requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. To bar immediate secondary trading in  
5 nonregistered initial public offerings, there was a further requirement that these securities be  
6 subject to the reporting requirements of Sections 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of  
7 1934 for not less than 90 days.

8  
9           Section 18(b)(4)(A) of the National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996 defines  
10 nonissuer transactions under Section 4(1) of the Securities Act of 1933 (“transactions by persons  
11 other than an issuer, underwriter, or dealer”) as “federal covered securities,” see Section 102(7),  
12 if the issuer files reports with the Securities and Exchange Commission under Sections 13 or  
13 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Under Section 18(a) of the Securities Act of 1933  
14 no state statute, rule, order, or other administrative action with respect to registration of securities  
15 or reporting requirements may apply to a federal covered security. To harmonize Section 202(4)  
16 with Sections 18(a) and 18(b)(4)(A) of the Securities Act of 1933, the 90 day reporting period in  
17 RUSA Section 402(2) has been removed.

18  
19           6. Section 202(5): Nonissuer transactions in specified fixed income securities: Prior  
20 Provisions: 1956 Act Section 402(b)(2)(B); RUSA Section 402(4). The substance of this  
21 exemption follows the 1956 Act and RUSA, but also addresses blank check and similar  
22 offerings, which became major concerns at the state and federal levels during the past two  
23 decades. Cf. Securities Act of 1933 Rule 419. See Reporter’s Note to Section 202(2).

24  
25           This subsection includes both debt securities with fixed maturity or a fixed interest rate and  
26 preferred stock with fixed dividend provisions.

27  
28           7. Section 202(6): Unsolicited brokerage transactions: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section  
29 402(b)(3); RUSA Section 402(5). Section 18(b)(4)(B) of the Securities Act of 1933 defines  
30 transactions as federal covered securities when they are subject to Section 4(4) of the Securities  
31 Act of 1933 “brokerage transactions executed upon customers’ orders on any exchange or in the  
32 over-the-counter market but not the solicitation of such orders.” Section 202(6) is intended to  
33 provide further exemption for nonagency transactions by dealers not within the scope of Section  
34 4(4).

35  
36           The 1956 Act Section 402(b)(3) had provided that the administrator “may by rule require that  
37 the customer acknowledge upon a specified form that the same was unsolicited, and that a signed  
38 copy of each such form be preserved by the broker-dealer for a specified period.” This type of  
39 requirement is generally preempted by Section 18(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 and is viewed  
40 as unnecessary for the limited class of dealer nonagency transactions that will be exempted by  
41 Section 202(6).

42  
43           8. Section 202(7): Nonissuer transactions by pledgees: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section  
44 402(b)(7); RUSA Section 402(9). This subsection is identical to the 1956 Act and substantively  
45 identical to RUSA.

46  
47           9. Section 202(8): Underwriter transactions: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 402(b)(4);  
48 RUSA Section 402(6). This subsection is substantively identical to the 1956 Act and RUSA.

1 10. Section 202(9): Unit secured transactions: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section  
2 402(b)(5); RUSA Section 402(7). In recent years this exemption has been one of concern to state  
3 securities administrators. The conditions that conclude this exemption are new and are intended  
4 to address these concerns. Otherwise this exemption is substantively identical to the 1956 Act  
5 and RUSA.

6  
7 11. Section 202(10): Bankruptcy, guardian, or conservator transactions: Prior Provisions:  
8 1956 Act Section 402(b)(6); RUSA Section 402(8). This subsection is identical to that in the  
9 1956 Act and RUSA.

10  
11 12. Section 202(13): Transactions with existing security holders: Prior Provisions: 1956  
12 Act Section 402(b)(11); RUSA Section 402(14). Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act of 1933  
13 exempts exchange offerings with existing security holders. Under Section 18(b)(4)(C)  
14 transactions subject to Section 3(a)(9) are federal covered securities. See Section 102(7).  
15 Notice requirements in the earlier 1956 Act and RUSA accordingly would be preempted by the  
16 Securities Act of 1933. See Section 18(a) of the Securities Act of 1933. Otherwise this  
17 exemption is substantively identical to the 1956 Act and RUSA.

18  
19 13. Section 202(14): Offerings when registered under this [Act] and the Securities Act of  
20 1933: Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 402(b)(12); RUSA Section 402(15). This exemption  
21 generally follows the 1956 Act and RUSA. Rule 165 of the Securities Act of 1933, which was  
22 adopted in 1999, allows the offeror of securities in a business combination to make written  
23 communications that offer securities for sale before a registration statement is filed as long as  
24 specified conditions are satisfied.

25  
26 RUSA Section 402(15) also had the requirement that a registration statement be filed under  
27 this Act, but not yet be effective. By eliminating this requirement this exemption will reach the  
28 offer (but not the sale) of a security that is anticipated to be a federal covered security by applying  
29 for listing on the New York Stock Exchange or other exchange specified in Section 18(b)(1) of  
30 the Securities Act of 1933, but the listing and federal covered security status has not yet become  
31 effective.

32  
33 14. Section 202(16): Control transactions: Prior Provision: RUSA Section 402(17). Until  
34 1972 mergers and similar transactions were not considered to involve sales and did not have to  
35 register under the Securities Act of 1933. In 1972 the Securities and Exchange Commission  
36 adopted Rule 145 defining many mergers and similar transactions to be sales and formally  
37 abandoned its earlier “no sale” doctrine. See 3 L. Loss & J. Seligman, *Securities Regulation*  
38 1262-1280 (3d ed. rev. 1999).

39  
40 Because most merger and similar transactions require shareholder approval and shareholders  
41 often have appraisal rights if they choose to dissent, the potential for abuse is less than in an  
42 offering of securities for cash. When appropriate the administrator can deny, condition, limit or  
43 revoke this exemption under Section 204. Section 202(16) does not follow the requirement in  
44 RUSA Section 402(17) that written notice of the transactions and a copy of the solicitation  
45 materials be given to the administrator 10 days before the consummation of the transaction and,  
46 that the administrator is empowered to disallow the exemption within the next 10 days.

47  
48 15. Section 202(18): Out-of-state offers or sales: Source of law: Colo. Section 11-51-102(7).

1 Compare A.S. Goldmen & Co., Inc. v. New Jersey Bur. of Sec., 163 F.3d 780 (3d Cir. 1999),  
2 which held that under the United States Constitution’s Commerce Clause a State could authorize  
3 a securities administrator to prevent a broker-dealer from selling securities from a State to  
4 purchasers in other States where purchase of the securities was authorized.  
5

6 16. Section 202(19): Employee benefit plans: Prior Provision: RUSA Section 401(b)(12).  
7 The 1956 Act Section 402(a)(11) was limited to investment contracts issued in connection with  
8 specified employee benefit plans if the administrator was given 30 days written notice.  
9

10 In 1979, the United States Supreme Court in International Bhd. of Teamsters v. Daniel, 439  
11 U.S. 551 (1979), held that a noncontributory, mandatory pension plan subject to the Employee  
12 Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 was not a security within the meaning of the Securities  
13 Act of 1933 or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. The Securities and Exchange Commission  
14 staff subsequently took the position that the interests of employees in involuntary, contributory  
15 plans are not securities. Sec. Ex. Act Rel. 6188, 19 SEC Dock. 465, 473 (1980). Both  
16 contributory and noncontributory pension or welfare plans subject to the Employee Retirement  
17 Income Security Act of 1974 are excluded from the definition of security in Section 102(29).  
18

19 In this definition, the term “advisors” does not mean “investment advisers,” as defined in  
20 Section 102(15).  
21

22 With respect to employee benefit plans that are securities, Section 202(19) provides an  
23 exemption, but follows RUSA in not limiting the exemption to investment contracts and not  
24 requiring 30 days notice to the administrator. The administrator, however, does retain the power  
25 under Section 204, if necessary or appropriate, to deny, condition, limit, or revoke this and other  
26 specified exemptions.  
27

28 The conclusion of Section 202(19) is derived from Rule 701(c) issued under the Securities  
29 Act of 1933. Compliance with Rule 701 is intended to provide compliance with this exemption.  
30

31 Both the 1956 Act and RUSA, for unstated reasons, treated employee benefit plans as exempt  
32 securities. There appears to be no appropriate reason to do so. Resale of employee benefit plans  
33 can occur under all appropriate section 202 transaction exemptions. Section 202(19) is not  
34 intended to provide a new method of publicly issuing securities.  
35  
36  
37

38 **SECTION 203. ADDITIONAL EXEMPTIONS AND WAIVERS.** The administrator, by  
39 rule or order, may exempt a security, transaction, or offer, or class of securities, transactions, or  
40 offers from Sections 301 through 306 and 504, and waive a requirement for a security,  
41 transaction, or offer or class of securities, transactions, or offers under Sections 201 and 202.

1 **Comments**

2 **Prior Provision:** RUSA Section 403.

3 1. Under this type of authority, at least 49 of 53 jurisdictions through July 2001 had adopted the  
4 Uniform Limited Offering Exemption (ULOE) or a Regulation D exemption, and 31 jurisdictions  
5 had adopted a Rule 144A exemption. The Drafting Committee did not attempt to incorporate ULOE  
6 or a Rule 144A exemption as part of this Act because of their complexity and the likelihood of  
7 periodic updating of its provisions. The Drafting Committee believes that Rule 144A, and similar  
8 exemptions in ULOE, can be most effectively implemented by rule rather than statute.  
9

10 2. Under Section 203 the states would also be authorized to adopt by rule or order new  
11 exemptions as circumstances warrant for new technologies such as the Internet. Cf. NASAA  
12 Resolution Regarding Securities Offered on Internet, NASAA Rep. ¶7040 (Jan. 7, 1996).  
13

14 3. It is the intent of this provision that ULOE, Rule 144A, and additional exemptions or waivers  
15 be adopted uniformly by states, to the extent this is practicable. Cf. Sections 608 and 612.  
16  
17  
18

19 **SECTION 204. DENIAL, CONDITION, LIMITATION, OR REVOCATION OF**

20 **EXEMPTIONS.** Except to the extent that a security or transaction involves a federal covered  
21 security, the administrator, by order, may deny, condition, limit, or revoke an exemption created  
22 under Section 201(7), 202, or 203 with respect to a specific security, transaction, or offer. The  
23 order must be issued in accordance with Sections 604 ~~or 605~~. An order issued under this section  
24 is not retroactive. A person does not violate Section 301, 303 through 306, ~~and~~ *or* 504 by reason  
25 of an offer to sell or sale effected after the entry of an order issued under this section if the person  
26 did not know and, in the exercise of reasonable care, could not have known; of the order.  
27

28 **Comments**

29 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 402(c); RUSA Section 404.

30 1. Section 204 is potentially far reaching. The ability to deny, condition, limit, or revoke the  
31 exemptions specified in Sections 201(7), 202, or 203 is adopted concomitant with the breadth of  
32 these exemptions. One or more than one security, transaction, or offer can be covered by a  
33 Section 204 order.

34 2. No order under Section 204 may be entered except in accordance with the requirements of  
35 Sections 604. The courts have given a securities administrator decision to deny or revoke an  
36 exemption substantial deference when there was compliance with applicable due process and

1 statutory requirements. See, e.g., *Johnson-Bowles Co., Inc. v. Div. of Sec.*, 829 P.2d 101 (Utah  
2 Ct. App. 1992).

3

4 3. NASAA urges authority to revoke all exemptions in Section 201 and to add the phrase  
5 “sustains the burden of proof that the” be added in the penultimate line afer “person” as was done  
6 in the 1956 Act.



1 are part of a federal registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission  
2 under the Securities Act of 1933 and a consent to service of process signed by the issuer  
3 [together with a fee of \$\_\_\_\_\_];

4 (2) after the initial offer of the federal covered security in this State, all records that  
5 are part of an amendment to a federal registration statement filed with the Securities and  
6 Exchange Commission under the Securities Act of 1933; and

7 (3) to the extent necessary or appropriate to compute fees, a report of the value of the  
8 federal covered securities sold or offered to persons located in this State, if the sales data are not  
9 included in records filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, [together with a fee of  
10 \$\_\_\_\_\_].

11 (b) A notice filing is effective for one year commencing upon the later of the notice filing  
12 or the effectiveness of the offering with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Upon  
13 expiration, a notice filing may be renewed by the issuer filing a copy of those records filed by the  
14 issuer with the Securities and Exchange Commission that the administrator, by rule or order,  
15 specifies [together with the renewal fee of \$ \_\_\_\_]. A previously filed consent to service of  
16 process may be incorporated by reference in a renewal. A renewed notice filing is effective upon  
17 the expiration of the filing being renewed.

18 (c) With respect to any security that is a federal covered security under Section  
19 18(b)(4)(D) of the Securities Act of 1933, the administrator, by rule, may require the notice filing  
20 by or on behalf of an issuer to include a copy of Form D, including the Appendix, as promulgated  
21 by the Securities and Exchange Commission and in effect on September 1, 1996<sub>2</sub> and a consent  
22 to service of process signed by the issuer no later than 15 days after the first sale of the federal  
23 covered security in this State, [together with a fee of \$\_\_\_\_\_].

24 (d) The administrator may issue a stop order suspending the offer and sale of a federal

1 covered security within this State, except a federal covered security under Section 18(b)(1) of the  
2 Securities Act of 1933, if the administrator finds that there is a failure to comply with a notice  
3 filing or fee requirement of this section. If the deficiency is corrected, the stop order is void as of  
4 the time of its entry.

5 (e) The administrator, by rule or order *[or otherwise]*, may waive any or all of the  
6 requirements of this section.

### 7 **Comments**

8 **Prior Provision:** None.

9 1. The little used “registration by notification” in the 1956 Act Section 302 or “registration  
10 by filing” in RUSA Section 302 are omitted from this Act because of the notice filing approach  
11 required by Section 18(b)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933 for federal covered securities.  
12

13 2. For Rule 506 offerings which are denoted in Section 18(d)(4)(D) of the Securities Act of  
14 1933, the Securities and Exchange Commission requires the filing of Form D. See Rule 503.  
15 When an issuer proceeds under Rule 506, Section 302(c) is intended to limit required state filings  
16 to no more than a requirement of filing a copy of Form D, as in effect on September 1, 1996,  
17 including the Appendix, a consent to service of process, and a fee.  
18

19 3. The definition of “filing” in Section 102(8) will permit states to receive electronic filing of  
20 records under this Section. The term will also permit states to receive records through a designee  
21 such as a central depository or to electronically receive notice filings simultaneously with the  
22 Securities and Exchange Commission or subsequent to those filings with the Securities and  
23 Exchange Commission.  
24

25 4. An administrator may accept under this and other sections a signed consent electronically  
26 filed with a designee of the administrator.  
27  
28  
29  
30

### 31 **SECTION 303. SECURITIES REGISTRATION BY COORDINATION.**

32 (a) A security for which a registration statement has been filed under the Securities Act  
33 of 1933 in connection with the same offering may be registered by coordination under this  
34 section.

35 (b) A registration statement and accompanying records under this section must contain or

1 be accompanied by the following records in addition to the information specified in Section 305  
2 and a consent to service of process complying with Section 61~~1~~<sup>2</sup>:

3 (1) a copy of the latest form of prospectus filed under the Securities Act of 1933;

4 (2) if the administrator, by rule or order, requires, a copy of the articles of  
5 incorporation and bylaws or their substantial equivalents currently in effect; a copy of any  
6 agreement with or among underwriters; a copy of any indenture or other instrument governing  
7 the issuance of the security to be registered; and a specimen, copy, or description of the security;

8 (3) if the administrator requests, copies of any other information, or any other records  
9 filed by the issuer under the Securities Act of 1933; and

10 (4) an undertaking to forward each amendment to the federal prospectus, other than  
11 an amendment that merely delays the effective date of the registration statement, promptly after it  
12 is filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

13 (c) A registration statement under this section becomes effective simultaneously with or  
14 subsequent to the federal registration statement when all the following conditions are satisfied:

15 (1) no stop order under subsection (d) or Section 306 or issued by the Securities and  
16 Exchange Commission is in effect and no proceeding is pending against the issuer under Section  
17 ~~408~~ 412; and

18 (2) the registration statement has been on file for at least 20 days or such shorter  
19 period as the administrator, by rule or order, specifies.

20 (d) The registrant shall promptly notify the administrator or a designee of the  
21 administrator in a record of the date and time when the federal registration statement became  
22 effective and the content of a price amendment, if any, and shall promptly file a record  
23 containing the information in the price amendment. If the notice is not timely received, the  
24 administrator may enter a stop order, without notice or hearing, retroactively denying

1 effectiveness to the registration statement or suspending its effectiveness until compliance with  
2 this subsection.

3 The administrator shall promptly notify the registrant of the issuance of the order by electronic  
4 means, telegram, or telephone and promptly confirm this notice by a record. If the registrant then  
5 complies with the notice requirements of this subsection, the stop order is void as of the time of  
6 its entry.

7 (e) If the federal registration statement becomes effective before ~~all~~ each of the  
8 conditions in this subsection are satisfied ~~and they are not or or are~~ waived by the administrator,  
9 the registration statement automatically becomes effective under this [Act] when all the  
10 conditions are satisfied or waived. If the registrant notifies the administrator of the date when the  
11 federal registration statement is expected to become effective, the administrator shall promptly  
12 notify the registrant by electronic means, telegram, or telephone and promptly confirm this notice  
13 by a record, indicating whether all the conditions are satisfied or waived and whether the  
14 administrator contemplates the institution of a proceeding under Section 306. The notice by the  
15 administrator does not preclude the institution of such a proceeding.

16 (f) The administrator, by rule or order, may waive or modify the application of a  
17 requirement of this section.

## 18 **Comments**

19 Prior Provisions: 1956 Act Section 303; RUSA Section 303.

20 1. Registration by coordination was one of the key innovations of the 1956 Act. As in the  
21 1956 Act, Section 303 streamlines the content of the registration statement and the procedure by  
22 which a registration statement becomes effective, but not the substantive standards governing the  
23 effectiveness of a registration statement.

24  
25 2. The phrase “in connection with the same offering” does not require that the federal and  
26 state registration statements be filed simultaneously or become effective simultaneously. A  
27 registration by coordination can be filed in a state after the effectiveness of the federal  
28 registration statement as long as the administrator does not conclude that the interval was too  
29 long to consider the state registration statement “the same offering.”

1 3. Sections 303(a)-(e) are similar to the 1956 Act except that these provisions have been  
2 modernized to include electronic filing and electronic notification. Cf. Sections 102(8), 102(25).  
3 It is anticipated that this will facilitate simultaneous filing with the Securities and Exchange  
4 Commission and the states which is consistent with the uniformity intended by this Act. See  
5 Section 612. Simultaneous or sequential filing could be administered through a designee similar  
6 to the current Web-CRD or in conjunction with the Securities and Exchange Commission's  
7 Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval (EDGAR) system or otherwise.

8  
9 4. Section 303(b) limits the administrator to requiring only the information and records filed  
10 with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

11  
12 5. Sections 303(c)-(e) describe the conditions to be satisfied to achieve effectiveness of a  
13 coordinated filing. "Price amendment" is defined in Section 102(23). The administrator retains  
14 the right to test the registration statement by the substantive standards of Section 306(a) and may  
15 issue a stop or denial order if the administrator believes any of those provisions are applicable.

16  
17 6. Section 303(f) follows RUSA Section 303(h) and empowers the administrator to waive or  
18 modify any of the requirements of this Section when it is appropriate to do so. An example  
19 would be the expedited procedures several states have adopted to coordinate with shelf  
20 registrations under Rule 415 adopted under the Securities Act of 1933. In waiving or modifying  
21 requirements, the administrator must make a finding satisfying the requirements of Section  
22 606(b).

## 23 24 25 26 **SECTION 304. SECURITIES REGISTRATION BY QUALIFICATION.**

27 (a) A security may be registered by qualification under this section.

28 (b) A registration statement under this section ~~shall~~ must contain the following  
29 information and be accompanied by the following records in addition to the information specified  
30 in Section 305; and a consent to service of process complying with Section 61~~1~~<sup>2</sup>:

31 (1) with respect to the issuer and any significant subsidiary, its name, address, and  
32 form of organization; the State or foreign jurisdiction and date of its organization; the general  
33 character and location of its business; a description of its physical properties and equipment; and  
34 a statement of the general competitive conditions in the industry or business in which it is or will  
35 be engaged;

36 (2) with respect to a director and officer of the issuer, or other person occupying a  
37 similar status or performing similar functions, the person's name, address, and principal

1 occupation for the past five years; the amount of securities of the issuer held by the person as of a  
2 specified date 30 days before the filing of the registration statement; the amount of the securities  
3 covered by the registration statement to which the person has indicated an intention to subscribe;  
4 and a description of a material interest in a material transaction with the issuer or a significant  
5 subsidiary effected within the past three years or proposed to be effected;

6 (3) with respect to persons covered by paragraph (2), the remuneration paid during the  
7 past 12 months and estimated to be paid during the next 12 months, directly or indirectly by the  
8 issuer, together with all predecessors, parents, subsidiaries, and affiliates, to all those persons in  
9 the aggregate;

10 (4) with respect to a person owning of record, or beneficially if known, 10 percent or  
11 more of the outstanding shares of any class of equity security of the issuer, the information  
12 specified in paragraph (2) other than the person's occupation;

13 (5) with respect to a promoter if the issuer was organized within the past three years,  
14 the information specified in paragraph (2), any amount paid to the promoter within that period or  
15 intended to be paid to the promoter, and the consideration for the payment;

16 (6) with respect to a person on whose behalf any part of the offering is to be made in a  
17 nonissuer distribution, the person's name and address; the amount of securities of the issuer held  
18 by the person as of the date of the filing of the registration statement; a description of any  
19 material interest in any material transaction with the issuer or any significant subsidiary effected  
20 within the past three years or proposed to be effected; and a statement of the reasons for making  
21 the offering;

22 (7) the capitalization and long term debt, on both a current and pro forma basis, of the  
23 issuer and any significant subsidiary, including a description of each security outstanding or  
24 being registered or otherwise offered, and a statement of the amount and kind of consideration,

1 whether in the form of cash, physical assets, services, patents, goodwill, or anything else of  
2 value, for which the issuer or any subsidiary has issued its securities within the past two years or  
3 is obligated to issue its securities;

4 (8) the kind and amount of securities to be offered; the proposed offering price or the  
5 method by which it is to be computed; any variation at which a proportion of the offering is to be  
6 made to a person or class of persons other than the underwriters, with a specification of the  
7 person or class; the basis upon which the offering is to be made if otherwise than for cash; the  
8 estimated aggregate underwriting and selling discounts or commissions and finders' fees,  
9 including separately cash, securities, contracts, or anything else of value to accrue to the  
10 underwriters or finders in connection with the offering, or, if the selling discounts or  
11 commissions are variable, the basis of determining them and their maximum and minimum  
12 amounts; the estimated amounts of other selling expenses, including legal, engineering, and  
13 accounting charges; the name and address of each underwriter and each recipient of a finder's  
14 fee; a copy of any underwriting or selling group agreement under which the distribution is to be  
15 made, or the proposed form of any such agreement whose terms have not yet been determined;  
16 and a description of the plan of distribution of any securities that are to be offered otherwise than  
17 through an underwriter;

18 (9) the estimated cash proceeds to be received by the issuer from the offering; the  
19 purposes for which the proceeds are to be used by the issuer; the estimated amount to be used for  
20 each purpose; the order or priority in which the proceeds will be used for the purposes stated; the  
21 amounts of any funds to be raised from other sources to achieve the purposes stated; the sources  
22 of the funds; and, if a part of the proceeds is to be used to acquire property, including goodwill,  
23 otherwise than in the ordinary course of business, the names and addresses of the vendors, the  
24 purchase price, the names of any persons who have received commissions in connection with the

1 acquisition, and the amounts of the commissions and other expenses in connection with the  
2 acquisition, including the cost of borrowing money to finance the acquisition;

3 (10) a description of any stock options or other security options outstanding, or to be  
4 created in connection with the offering, together with the amount of any such options held or to  
5 be held by each person required to be named in paragraph (2), (4), (5), (6), or (8), and by any  
6 person that holds or will hold 10 percent or more in the aggregate of any such options;

7 (11) the dates of, parties to, and general effect concisely stated of each management or  
8 other material contract made or to be made otherwise than in the ordinary course of business to  
9 be performed in whole or in part at or after the filing of the registration statement or was made  
10 within the past two years, together with a copy of the contract;

11 (12) a description of any pending litigation or proceeding to which the issuer is a party  
12 and which materially affects its business or assets, including litigation or a proceeding known to  
13 be contemplated by governmental authorities;

14 (13) a copy of any prospectus, pamphlet, circular, form letter, advertisement, or other  
15 sales literature intended as of the effective date to be used in connection with the offering and  
16 any solicitation of interest used in compliance with Section 202(15)(B);

17 (14) a specimen or copy of the security being registered, unless the security is  
18 uncertificated, a copy of the issuer's articles of incorporation and bylaws, or their substantial  
19 equivalents, currently in effect; and a copy of any indenture or other instrument covering the  
20 security to be registered;

21 (15) a signed or conformed copy of an opinion of counsel concerning the legality of  
22 the security being registered, with an English translation if it is in a language other than English,  
23 which states whether the security when sold will be validly issued, fully paid, and nonassessable  
24 and, if a debt security, a binding obligation of the issuer;

1 (16) the consent in a record of any accountant, engineer, appraiser, or other person  
2 whose profession gives authority to a statement made by the person, if the person is named as  
3 having prepared or certified a report or valuation, other than a public and official record, which is  
4 used in connection with the registration statement;

5 (17) a balance sheet of the issuer as of a date within four months before the filing of  
6 the registration statement; a statement of income and changes in financial position for each of the  
7 three fiscal years preceding the date of the balance sheet and for any period between the close of  
8 the last fiscal year and the date of the balance sheet, or for the period of the issuer's and any  
9 predecessors' existence if less than three years; and, if any part of the proceeds of the offering is  
10 to be applied to the purchase of a business, the financial statements that would be required if that  
11 business were the registrant; and

12 (18) the additional information the administrator, by rule or order, specifies.

13 (c) The administrator, by rule or order, may waive any of the requirements of subsection  
14 (b).

15 (d) A registration statement under this section becomes effective 30 days, or any shorter  
16 period as the administrator, by rule or order, specifies, after the date the registration statement or  
17 the last amendment other than a price amendment is filed, if:

18 (1) no stop order is in effect and no proceeding is pending under Section 306;

19 (2) the administrator has not issued an order under Section 306(c) that effectiveness  
20 be delayed; and

21 (3) the ~~registrant~~ applicant or registrant has not requested that effectiveness be  
22 delayed.

23 (e) The administrator may delay effectiveness for a single period of not more than 90  
24 days if the administrator determines the registration statement is not complete in all material

1 respects and promptly notifies the applicant or registrant of that determination. The  
2 administrator may also delay effectiveness for a further period of not more than 30 days if the  
3 administrator determines that the delay is necessary or appropriate.

4 (f) The administrator, by rule or order, may require as a condition of registration under  
5 this section that a prospectus containing a specified part of the information specified in  
6 subsection (b) be sent or given to each person to whom an offer is made, before or concurrently  
7 with whichever first occurs of:

8 (1) the first offer made in a record to the person otherwise than by means of a public  
9 advertisement, by or for the account of the issuer or another person on whose behalf the offering  
10 is being made, or by an underwriter or broker-dealer ~~who~~ that is offering part of an unsold  
11 allotment or subscription taken by the person as a participant in the distribution;

12 (2) the confirmation of any sale made by or for the account of the person;

13 (3) payment pursuant to such a sale; or

14 (4) delivery of the security pursuant to such a sale.

## 15 **Comments**

16 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 304; RUSA Section 304.

17 1. This Section generally follows the 1956 Act and RUSA. Any security may be registered  
18 by qualification, whether or not another procedure is available. Ordinarily, however, registration  
19 by qualification will only be used by an issuer when no other procedure is available.

20  
21 2. Section 304(b) originally was modeled on Schedule A of the Securities Act of 1933.  
22 Section 304(b)(17) uses the same terminology as is used currently in Regulation S-X of the  
23 Securities and Exchange Commission. Under Sections 605(a) and (c) the administrator is  
24 authorized to specify the form and content of rules and forms governing registration statements  
25 and the form and content of financial statements required under this Act.

26  
27 3. Under Section 304(b)(18) and 304(c) the administrator may require additional information  
28 or may waive in whole or in part or conditionally any of the requirements of Section 304(b).  
29 Section 304(b)(18), for example, authorizes the administrator to require that a report by an  
30 accountant, engineer, appraiser or other professional person be filed. Section 304(b)(18) would  
31 also authorize that securities of designated classes under a trust indenture contain additional  
32 specified information.

1           QUERIES:  
2

3           (1) The Pennsylvania Securities Commission urges that Section 304(d) should be predicated  
4 also on “all information required by the Commission has been furnished” before a person can  
5 request effectiveness.  
6

7           (2) Pennsylvania further raises the question whether “in all material respects” in Section  
8 304(e) includes compliance with a request to escrow promotional shares or gross proceeds as  
9 permitted by Section 305(g). I do not believe that this Section, unlike Section 306, should be so  
10 interpreted. “In all material respects” is intended solely to modify “the registration statement.”  
11

12           (3) Pennsylvania also urges that the time limits in Sections 304(d) and (e) could harm small  
13 business. “State regulators remain extremely flexible with small business issuers, often keeping  
14 files open for over a year. While this provision may be well-intentioned as a counterweight to  
15 bureaucratic intransigence in practice it very well may work to the detriment of those who need  
16 the help most – small businesses and entrepreneurs.”  
17

18  
19  
20           **SECTION 305. SECURITIES REGISTRATION FILINGS.**

21           (a) [~~Registration requirements.~~ **Who may file.**] A registration statement may be filed by  
22 the issuer, ~~or~~ a person on whose behalf the offering is to be made, or a registered broker-dealer.

23           (b) [**Filing fee.**] A person filing a registration statement shall pay a filing fee of [\$\_\_\_\_].  
24 When a registration statement is withdrawn before the effective date or a preeffective stop order  
25 is entered under Section 306, the administrator shall retain [\$ \_\_\_\_] of the fee.

26           (c) [**Status of registration statement offering.**] A registration statement filed under  
27 Section 303 or 304 must specify:

28                   (1) the amount of securities to be offered in this State;  
29                   (2) the states in which a registration statement or similar record in connection with the  
30 offering has been or is to be filed; and

31                   (3) any adverse order, judgment, or decree entered in connection with the offering by  
32 ~~the regulatory agency in a State, by a court, or a state’s securities regulator,~~ by the Securities and  
33 Exchange Commission, *or by a court.*

34           (d) [**Incorporation by reference.**] A record filed under this [Act] or the predecessor act,

1 within five years preceding the filing of a registration statement, may be incorporated by  
2 reference in the registration statement to the extent that the record is currently accurate.

3 (e) [**Waiver of requirements.**] The administrator, by rule or order, may waive the  
4 requirement for inclusion of any information or record in a registration statement.

5 (f) [**Nonissuer distribution.**] In the case of a nonissuer distribution, information may  
6 not be required under subsection (j) or Section 304, unless it is known to the person filing the  
7 registration statement or to the person on whose behalf the distribution is to be made, or can be  
8 furnished by these persons without unreasonable effort or expense.

9 (g) [**Escrow and impoundment.**] The administrator, by rule or order, may require as a  
10 condition of registration that a security issued within the past five years or to be issued to a  
11 promoter for a consideration substantially different from the public offering price, or to a person  
12 for a consideration other than cash, be deposited in escrow; and that the proceeds from the sale of  
13 the registered security in this State be impounded until the issuer receives a specified amount  
14 from the sale of the security either in this State or elsewhere. The administrator, by rule or  
15 order, may specify the conditions of any escrow or impoundment required under this subsection,  
16 but the administrator may not reject a depository institution solely because of its location in  
17 another State.

18 (h) [**Form of subscription.**] The administrator, by rule or order, may require as a  
19 condition of registration that a registered security be sold only on a specified form of subscription  
20 or sale contract and that a signed or conformed copy of each contract be filed under this [Act] or  
21 preserved for a period of not more than three years specified in the rule or order.

22 (i) [**Effective period.**] Except during the time a stop order is in effect under Section 306,  
23 a registration statement is effective for one year after its effective date, or for a longer period  
24 designated in an order of the administrator during which the security is being offered or

1 distributed in a nonexempted transaction by or for the account of the issuer or other person on  
2 whose behalf the offering is being made or by an underwriter or broker-dealer ~~who~~ that is still  
3 offering part of an unsold allotment or subscription taken as a participant in the distribution. For  
4 the purpose of a nonissuer transaction, all outstanding securities of the same class identified in  
5 the registration statement as a registered security are considered to be registered while the  
6 registration statement is effective. A registration statement may not be withdrawn until one year  
7 after its effective date if any securities of the same class are outstanding. A registration statement  
8 may be withdrawn only with the approval of the administrator.

9 (j) [**Periodic reports.**] While a registration statement is effective, the administrator, by  
10 rule or order, may require the person that filed the registration statement to file reports, not more  
11 often than quarterly, to keep reasonably current the information ~~contained~~ or record in the  
12 registration statement and to disclose the progress of the offering.

13 (k) [**Posteffective amendments.**] A registration statement may be amended after its  
14 effective date. The posteffective amendment becomes effective when the administrator so  
15 orders. If a posteffective amendment is made to increase the number of securities specified to be  
16 offered or sold, the person filing the amendment shall pay a registration fee of [\$\_]. A  
17 posteffective amendment relates back to the date of the offering of the additional securities being  
18 registered, if within six months after the date of the sale, the amendment is filed and the  
19 additional registration fee is paid.

## 20 **Comments**

21 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 305; RUSA Section 305.

22 **QUERY:** Should Section 305(f) be reallocated to Section 304 and 305(j)?

23 NASAA proposes addition of a provision that currently exists in certain state securities  
24 statutes. The administrator should have the ability to require, as a condition of registration, a  
25 trust indenture as a condition of registration of debt securities. The language would read as:  
26

1 The administrator may by rule require that registered securities of designated classes  
2 shall be issued under a trust indenture containing such provisions as the administrator  
3 determines.  
4

5 1. Section 305 generally follows the 1956 Act and RUSA except that earlier provisions in  
6 both Acts referring to Investment Company Act of 1940 securities, which are federal covered  
7 securities, see Section 102(7), have been deleted.  
8

9 2. Section 305 is applicable both to registration by coordination, see Section 303, and  
10 registration by qualification, see Section 304.  
11

12 3. Section 305(a) expressly authorizes registration by “a person on whose behalf the offering  
13 is to be made.” This would permit a nonissuer, cf. Section 102(18), or a broker-dealer to file a  
14 registration statement independent of the issuer.  
15

16 4. This Act is intended to be revenue neutral, see Comment 2 to Section 612. Accordingly,  
17 Section 305(b) does not specify what fees states should provide.  
18

19 5. Section 305(c), which generally follows the 1956 Act and RUSA, does not require in  
20 Section 305(c)(3) disclosure of an order permitting the withdrawal of a registration statement.  
21 The administrator may, however, require disclosure of this information in a registration by  
22 qualification under Section 304(b)(18).  
23

24 6. Section 305(c), like every other provision concerned with the content of the registration  
25 statement, must be read with Section 306(a)(1) which judges the accuracy and completeness of  
26 the registration statement as of its effective date unless an order denying effectiveness had been  
27 entered before the effective date. A registration statement must be kept current with changing  
28 developments until the effectiveness date, but a registration statement is not required to be  
29 amended after the effective date except to correct inaccuracies or deficiencies which existed as of  
30 the effective date. An administrator, however, separately may require under Section 305(j)  
31 periodic reports to keep reasonably current the information contained in the registration  
32 statement.  
33

34 7. Under Section 305(d) incorporation by reference is permitted as a matter of administrative  
35 practice.  
36

37 8. Section 305(e) is the substantive equivalent to provisions in the 1956 Act and RUSA.  
38

39 9. Section 305(f) is the substantive equivalent to provisions in the 1956 Act and RUSA.  
40 This subsection is designed to address nonissuer offerings where the seller cannot obtain certified  
41 financial statements and other normally required records. The phrase “without unreasonable  
42 effort or expense” comes from Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933. It is not meant to  
43 apply to expenses incidental to supplying required information required for registration in the  
44 case of a nonissuer distribution by a person in a control relationship with the issuer or otherwise  
45 having access to or contractual rights to obtain the required information. Section 305(f) only  
46 applies to registration by qualification under Section 304 and periodic reports for either  
47 registration by coordination or registration by qualification under Section 305(j).  
48

1 10. Section 305(g), follows the 1956 Act and RUSA, and authorizes the administrator to  
2 require the escrow and impoundment of funds until the issuer receives a specified amount from  
3 the sale of the security in this State or elsewhere. This section is limited to a security issued  
4 within the past five years or to be issued to a promoter for a consideration substantially different  
5 from the public offering price or to a person for a consideration other than cash. The typical  
6 distribution subject to Section 305(g) will be a relatively new promotional or speculative  
7 offering.  
8

9 As of August 2001, 44 jurisdictions have adopted an escrow or impoundment provision.  
10 Alabama Section 8-6-8(b); Alaska Section 45.55.110(g); Arizona Section 44-1876; Arkansas  
11 Section 23-42-404(g); California Section 25,141; Colorado Section 11-51-302(5); Connecticut  
12 Section 36b-19(g); Delaware Section 7321; District of Columbia Section 2663.6[306](g); Florida  
13 Section 517.181; Georgia Section 10-5-6(e); Guam Section 46,305(g); Hawaii Section 485-18;  
14 Idaho Section 30-1428; Indiana Section 23-2-1-6(k); Iowa Section 502.208(7); Kentucky Section  
15 292.380(3); Louisiana Section 51:706(D); Maine Section 10,405(6) & (7); Minnesota Section  
16 80A.12. Subd. 5; Mississippi Section 75-71-417(a); Missouri Section 409.305(f); Nebraska  
17 Section 8-1108(2); Nevada Section 90.500(8) & (9); New Hampshire Section 421-B:15(V) &  
18 (VI); New Jersey Section 49:3-61(e); New Mexico Section 58-13B-24(G); North Carolina  
19 Section 78A-28(g); North Dakota Section 10-04-08.1(1); Ohio Section 1707.10; Oregon Section  
20 59.085(3); Pennsylvania Section 207(g); Puerto Rico Section 875[305](g); Rhode Island Section  
21 7-11-305(g); South Carolina Section 35-1-950; South Dakota Section 47-31A-305(g); Tennessee  
22 Section 48-2-107(f); Texas Section 9 [581-9]; Utah Section 61-1-11(7); Vermont Section 4223;  
23 Virginia Section 13.1-510(h); Washington Section 21.20.250; West Virginia Section 32-4-  
24 305(h); Wyoming Section 17-4-111(g).  
25

26 Under Section 305(g) the administrator would also be authorized to order the release of  
27 impounded funds back to prospective purchasers. See, e.g., *State ex rel. Ariz. Corp. Comm'n v.*  
28 *Bionomics Int'l, Ltd.*, 543 P.2d 802 (Ariz. Ct. App. 1975). However, before release of funds  
29 held in impoundment back to prospective purchasers, the administrator must afford the registrant  
30 an opportunity to be heard.  
31

32 Unlike the statute in *Schwaemmle Const. Co. v. Michigan Dep't of Commerce*, 360 N.W.2d  
33 141 (Mich. 1984), Section 305(g) broadly provides that the administrator “may determine the  
34 conditions of any escrow or impoundment under this subsection.” As in *Schwaemmle*, this  
35 power only will operate until the impounded or escrowed funds are released.  
36

37 Section 305(g) follows the 1956 Act and RUSA and provides that the administrator may not  
38 reject a depository solely because of its location in another state.  
39

40 11. Section 305(h) follows the 1956 Act in authorizing the administrator to specify the form  
41 of a subscription or sale contract.  
42

43 12. Section 305(i) generally follows the 1956 Act and RUSA. The term “nonissuer  
44 transaction” or “nonissuer distribution” is defined in Section 102(18). A sale by a nonissuer  
45 would have to be registered under Section 301 unless it is exempted or involves a federal covered  
46 security.  
47

48 Section 202(1) exempts “isolated nonissuer transactions.” When a nonissuer transaction is

1 not exempt under Section 202(1), it may still be exempted under other transaction exemptions,  
2 including Sections 202(2) through (8), (11), or (12).

3  
4 If no exemption is available for a nonissuer distribution, and it does not involve a federal  
5 covered security, the security must be registered under Article 3. Under the first sentence of  
6 Section 305(i) each registration statement remains effective for at least one year and for any  
7 longer period the administrator may determine. However, no registration statement is effective  
8 while a stop order with respect to it is in effect under Section 306.

9  
10 For the purposes of a nonissuer transaction, all outstanding securities of the same class as a  
11 registered security are considered to be registered as long as the registration statement remains  
12 effective. This means that during the effective period of a registration statement under this Act  
13 all securities of the same class can be traded by anyone, including nonissuers, as if they were  
14 registered.

15  
16 Section 305(i) also provides that, unless the administrator determines otherwise, a  
17 registration statement cannot be withdrawn until one year after its effective date if any securities  
18 of the same class are outstanding. This is designed to protect sellers who would be unaware of a  
19 withdrawal from being subject to civil liability.

20  
21 13. Section 305(k) follows RUSA and a procedure limited to investment companies in the  
22 1956 Act in allowing posteffective date amendments. Under Section 305(k), when a  
23 posteffective amendment increases the number of securities to be offered or sold, an additional  
24 registration fee is required.

## 25 26 27 28 **SECTION 306. DENIAL, SUSPENSION, AND REVOCATION OF SECURITIES**

### 29 **REGISTRATION.**

30 (a) [**Stop orders.**] The administrator may issue a stop order denying effectiveness to, or  
31 suspending or revoking the effectiveness of, a registration statement if the administrator finds  
32 that the order is in the public interest and that:

33 (1) the registration statement as of its effective date or before the effective date in the  
34 case of an order denying effectiveness, an amendment under Section 305(k) as of its effective  
35 date, or a report under Section 305(j), is incomplete in a material respect or contains a statement  
36 that, in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, was false or misleading with  
37 respect to a material fact;

38 (2) this [Act] or a rule adopted or order issued under this [Act] or a condition ~~lawfully~~

1 imposed under this [Act] has been willfully violated, in connection with the offering, by the  
2 person filing the registration statement; by the issuer, a partner, officer, or director of the issuer  
3 or a person occupying a similar status or performing a similar function; a promoter of the issuer;  
4 or a person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by the issuer; but only if the person  
5 filing the registration statement is directly or indirectly controlled by or acting for the issuer; or  
6 by an underwriter;

7 (3) the security registered or sought to be registered is the subject of a permanent or  
8 temporary injunction of a court of competent jurisdiction or an administrative stop order or  
9 similar order entered under any other federal or state law applicable to the offering, but the  
10 administrator may not institute a proceeding against an effective registration statement under this  
11 paragraph more than one year after the date of the order or injunction relied on, and the  
12 administrator may not enter an order under this paragraph on the basis of an order or injunction  
13 entered under the securities act of another State unless the order or injunction was based on facts  
14 that would constitute, as of the date of the order, a ground for a stop order under this section;

15 (4) the issuer's enterprise or method of business includes or would include activities  
16 that are illegal where performed;

17 (5) with respect to a security sought to be registered under Section 303, there has been  
18 a failure to comply with the undertaking required by Section 303(b)(4);

19 (6) the applicant or registrant has failed to pay the proper filing fee, but the  
20 administrator may enter only a stop order under this paragraph and shall void the order if the  
21 deficiency is corrected;

22 ~~(A)~~ ~~(7)~~ the offering ~~has~~ ~~will~~ worked or tended to work a fraud upon purchasers or  
23 would so operate; [; or

24 ~~(7)~~ ~~(8)~~ the applicant or registration statement violates a rule adopted or order issued

1 by the administrator under this [Act] that:

2 ~~(B)~~ (A) the offering has been or would be made with unreasonable amounts of  
3 underwriters' and sellers' discounts, commissions, or other compensation, or promoters profits or  
4 participations, or unreasonable amounts or kinds of options; or

5 ~~(C)~~ (B) the offering is being made on terms that are unfair, unjust, or inequitable].

6 (b) [**Institution of stop order.**] The administrator may not institute a stop order  
7 proceeding against an effective registration statement on the basis of a fact or transaction known  
8 to the administrator when the registration statement became effective unless the proceeding is  
9 instituted within 30 days after the registration statement became effective.

10 (c) [**Summary process.**] The administrator may summarily revoke, deny, postpone, or  
11 suspend the effectiveness of a registration statement pending final determination of an  
12 administrative proceeding. Upon the entry of the order, the administrator shall promptly notify  
13 each person specified in subsection (d) that the order has been entered, the reasons for the  
14 postponement or suspension, and that within 15 days after the receipt of a request in a record  
15 from the person the matter will be scheduled for a hearing. If a hearing is not requested and none  
16 is ordered by the administrator, the order remains in effect until it is modified or vacated by the  
17 administrator. If a hearing is requested or ordered, the administrator, after notice of and  
18 opportunity for hearing to each person specified in subsection (d), may modify or vacate the  
19 order or extend it until final determination.

20 (d) [**Procedural requirements.**] A stop order may not be entered under subsection (a) or  
21 (b) without:

22 (1) appropriate notice to the applicant or registrant, the issuer, and the person on  
23 whose behalf the securities are to be or have been offered;

24 (2) opportunity for hearing; and

1 (3) findings of fact and conclusions of law in a record [in accordance with the state  
2 administrative procedure act].

3 (e) [**Modification or vacation.**] The administrator may modify or vacate a stop order  
4 entered under this section if the administrator finds that the conditions that caused its entry have  
5 changed or that it is otherwise in the public interest.

### 6 **Comments**

7 **QUERY:** In Section 306(a)(3), should we include foreign states? Pennsylvania  
8 urges yes.  
9

10 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 306; RUSA Section 306.  
11

12 1. This Section generally follows the 1956 Act and RUSA and applies to both registration by  
13 coordination under Section 303 and registration by qualification under Section 304.  
14

15 2. Section 306(a)(1) follows the 1956 Act and RUSA in testing in a suspension or revocation  
16 proceeding the completeness and accuracy of a registration statement as of the registration  
17 statement's effective date. A registration statement that becomes misleading because of a  
18 development that occurs after its effective date is not a ground for the issuance of a stop order  
19 under Section 306(a)(1). Posteffective amendments are not required except to correct  
20 inaccuracies as of the effective date. An administrator, however, may require periodic reports  
21 under Section 305(j). With respect to periodic reports under Section 305(j), a misleading report  
22 would be the basis of a stop order under Section 306(a)(1) if it is materially inaccurate as of the  
23 date it was filed.  
24

25 3. On the meaning of "willfully," see Comment 2 under Section 508.  
26

27 4. A violation by an issuer has the same consequences whether the issuer has filed a  
28 registration statement or has had a local broker-dealer file it. This is not the case when the  
29 registration statement is filed by a local broker-dealer acting independently.  
30

31 5. The verb "is" at the beginning of Section 306(a)(3) means that a stop order or injunction  
32 that has expired or been vacated is not the ground for action under this paragraph.  
33

34 6. Section 306(a)(4) applies to activity that is conducted in a state where that activity is  
35 illegal. It does not apply if the activity is not illegal under that state's law. This paragraph is not  
36 meant to apply to activity which is lawful where conducted but would be illegal if conducted in  
37 the state where the registration statement is filed.  
38

39 7. Sections 306(a)(5)-(6) follow the 1956 Act and RUSA.  
40

41 8. Sections 306(a)(7)-(8) address merit regulation. Sections 306(E)-(F) of the 1956 Act  
42 addressed merit regulation by authorizing a stop order when an "offering has worked or tended to

1 work a fraud upon purchasers or would so operate” or “the offering has been or would be made  
 2 with unreasonable amounts of underwriters’ and sellers’ discounts, commissions, or other  
 3 compensation, or promoters’ profits or participation, or unreasonable amounts or kinds of  
 4 options.”

5  
 6 By 1985 a majority of states which had adopted the 1956 Act had adopted this approach to  
 7 merit regulation rather than the earlier and broader “unfair, unjust or inequitable” standard that  
 8 then applied in a minority of states.

9  
 10 RUSA Sections 306(a)(5)-(6) adopted provisions substantively identical to the 1956 Act and  
 11 included in brackets an “unfair, unjust, or inequitable” alternative.

12  
 13 As of July 2001 46 jurisdictions had adopted a form of Section 306(a)(7) (“will tend to work  
 14 a fraud or would so operate”); 35 jurisdictions had adopted a form of Section 306(a)(8)(A)  
 15 (“unreasonable amounts of underwriters’ and sellers’ discounts, commissions, or other  
 16 compensation, or promoter profits or participations, or unreasonable amounts or kinds of  
 17 options”); and 16 jurisdictions had adopted a form of Section 306(a)(8)(B) (“terms that are  
 18 unfair, unjust, or inequitable”).

19  
 20  
 21 **Section 306(a)(7) & (8) - Denial, Suspension and Revocation**

22		Sect.(7)	Sect. (8)(A)	Sect. (8)(B)
23		Will work or	Unreasonable	Unfair, un-
24		tend to work	amounts	just or
25	Jurisdiction	fraud		Inequitable
26				terms
27	Alabama Sec. 8-6-9(a)	X	X	X
28	Alaska Sec. 45.55.120(a)	X	X	
29	Arizona Sec. 44-1921	X		X <sup>1</sup>
30	Arkansas Sec. 23-42-405(a)	X	X	X
31	California Sec. 25410(a)	X	X	X
32	Colorado Sec. 11-51-306			
33	Connecticut 36b-20(a)	X	X	
34	Delaware Sec. 7308(a)	X	X	
35	District of Columbia Sec. 260	X	X	
36	Florida Sec. 517.111(1)			X
37	Georgia Sec. 10-5-7(a)	X		
38	Guam Sec. 46306(a)	X	X	
39	Hawaii Sec. 485-13(a)	X	X	
40	Idaho Sec. 30-1413	X	X	
41	Illinois Sec. 11 [5/11]	X		
42	Indiana Sec. 23-2-1-7(a)	X	X	

---

<sup>1</sup> Arizona Section 44-1921(3) “. . . or would be unfair or inequitable to the purchasers.”

1	Iowa Sec. 502.209	X	X	
2	Kansas Sec. 17-1260(a)		X	X
3	Kentucky Sec. 292.390(1)	X	X	
4	Louisiana Sec. 51:707(A)	X		
5	Maine 10406(1)	X	X	X
6	Maryland ll-511(a)	X		
7	Massachusetts Sec. 305(A)	X	X	
8	Michigan Sec. 451.706(a)	X	X	
9	Minnesota Sec. 80A.13 Subd.1	X		X <sup>2</sup>
10	Mississippi Sec. 75-71-425	X	X	
11	Missouri Sec. 409.306(a)	X	X	X <sup>3</sup>
12	Montana Sec. 30-10-207(1)	X	X	
13	Nebraska Sec. 8-1109.01	X	X	X
14	Nevada Sec. 90.510(1)	X	X	
15	New Hampshire Sec. 421-B:16(b)	X	X	X <sup>4</sup>
16	New Jersey Sec. 49:3-64			
17	New Mexico Sec. 58-13B-25(A)	X	X	
18	New York Sec. 352(1)			
19	North Carolina Sec. 78A-29(a)(2)	X	X	
20	North Dakota Sec. 10-04-09	X		X
21	Ohio Sec. 1707.13	X		X <sup>5</sup>
22	Oklahoma Sec. 306(a)(2)	X	X	
23	Oregon Sec. 59.105(1)		X	X
24	Pennsylvania Sec. 208(a)	X	X	
25	Puerto Rico Sec. 876(a)(2)	X	X	
26	Rhode Island Sec. 7-1 l-306(a)			

---

<sup>2</sup> Minnesota Section 80A. 13(6) - "except with respect to securities which are being registered by notification, the terms of the securities are unfair and inequitable; provided, however, that the commissioner may not determine that an offering is unfair and inequitable solely on the grounds that the securities are to be sold at an excessive price where the offering price has been determined by arms length negotiation between nonaffiliated parties. The selling price of any security being sold by a broker-dealer licensed in this state shall be presumed to have been determined by arms length negotiation;"

<sup>3</sup> Missouri Section 409.306(a)(E)(ii) – “any aspect of the offering is substantially unfair, unjust, unequitable or oppressive”

<sup>4</sup> New Hampshire Section 421-B: 16(b)(7), ". . .except with respect to securities which are being registered by notification the terms of the securities are unfair and inequitable; provided, however, that the secretary of state may not determine that an offering is unfair and inequitable solely on the grounds that the securities are to be sold at an excessive price where the offering price has been determined by arms length negotiation between nonaffiliated parties. The selling price of any security being sold by a broker-dealer licensed in this state shall be presumed to have been determined by arms length negotiation;"

<sup>5</sup> Ohio Section 1707.13. “. . . that such security is being disposed of or purchased on grossly unfair terms. . .”

1	South Carolina Sec. 35-1-1010(b)	X	X	
2	South Dakota Sec. 47-3 IA-306(a)(2)	X	X	X
3	Tennessee Sec. 48-2-112(a)	X		
4	Texas Sec. 32[581-32]	X		
5	Utah Sec. 61-1-12(1)	X	X	
6	Vermont Sec. 4211	X		X <sup>6</sup>
7	Virginia Sec. 13.1-513(a)			
8	Washington Sec. 21.20.280			
9	West Virginia Sec. 32-3-306(a)(2)			
10	Wisconsin Sec. 551.28(1)			
11	Wyoming Sec. 17-4-112(a)			
12				
13	<b>TOTALS:</b>	<b>46</b>	<b>35</b>	<b>16</b>

14  
15 The National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996 subsequently preempted merit  
16 regulation of federal covered securities. See Section 102(7).

17  
18 Section 306(a)(8) takes a different approach. Subject to the National Securities Markets  
19 Improvement Act of 1996, merit standards are retained but on the condition that they are adopted  
20 by the administrator by rule or order. This will provide notice to issuers of a state’s merit  
21 standards. Notice will address one criticism of merit regulation. See generally 1 L. Loss & J.  
22 Seligman, Securities Regulation 111-124 (3d ed. rev. 1998).

23  
24 Statements of Policy of the North American Securities Administrator Association that  
25 have been adopted by a state would provide notice in compliance with Section 306(a)(8).  
26 Similarly other state rules or orders could be adopted in the future to address new types of  
27 securities as they occur.

28  
29 An order under Section 306(a)(8) can be adopted after a securities registration statement  
30 has been filed.

31  
32 Under Section 306(a)(8) an administrator, by rule or order, for example, could adopt a  
33 standard that would provide the basis for a stop order denying effectiveness to a development  
34 state company that has no specific business purpose or plan and has indicated that its business  
35 purpose or plan is to engage in a merger or acquisition with an unidentified company, entity, or  
36 person. “Blank check offerings” are subject to Rule 419 adopted under the Securities Act of  
37 1933.

38  
39 9. Section 306(b) follows the 1956 Act and RUSA and allows an administrator up to 30  
40 days after a registration statement becomes effective to institute a stop order proceeding on the  
41 basis of a fact or transaction known when the registration statement became effective. This will  
42 avoid the necessity of an administrator issuing a stop order prematurely.

---

<sup>6</sup> Vermont Section 4211(5), “Is of bad business repute;”

1           10. Sections 306(c)-(d) assure each person subject to a stop order notice, opportunity for  
2 a hearing, and written findings of fact and conclusions of law contained in a record.  
3

4           11. An administrator must consider the public interest when issuing a stop order and may  
5 under Section 306(e) consider the public interest when modifying or vacating a stop order. See,  
6 e.g., *TechnoMedical Lab., Inc. v. Utah Sec. Div.*, 744 P.2d 320, 324-325 (Utah Ct. App. 1987) (a  
7 state has a valid public interest in stopping the issuance of hundreds of thousands of public shares  
8 that did not comply with the disclosure requirements of securities registration); cf. stop orders  
9 under the Securities Act of 1933, see 1 L. Loss & J. Seligman, *Securities Regulation* 576-589 (3d  
10 ed. rev. 1998).



1 (i) the broker-dealer is both registered or not required to be  
2 registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and registered under the securities laws of  
3 the State ~~from~~ in which the relationship with the customer ~~moved into this State~~ was established  
4 and where the customer had maintained a principal place of residence; and

5 (ii) within 45 days after the customer's first transaction in this  
6 State, the broker-dealer files an application for registration in this State and no further transaction  
7 is effected more than ~~60~~ 75 days after the date on which the application is filed, or, if earlier, the  
8 date on which this State notifies the broker-dealer that it has denied the application for  
9 registration or has stayed the pendency of the application for cause;

10 [(F) no more than three persons in this State during the previous 12  
11 months period, in addition to those specified in subparagraphs (A) through (E), if the broker-  
12 dealer is both registered or not required to be registered under the Securities Exchange Act of  
13 1934 and registered under the securities act ~~in~~ of the State in which the broker-dealer has its  
14 principal place of business;] and

15 (G) any other person the administrator, by rule or order, specifies.

16 [(2) a bank if its broker-dealer activities are limited to those specified in  
17 subsections 3(a)(4)(B)(i) through (vi) and (viii) through ~~(ix)~~, 3(a)(5)(B), and 3(a)(5)(C) of the  
18 Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and sales under subsection 3(a)(5)(C) are solely to institutional  
19 investors;] and

20 (3) any other broker-dealer the administrator, by rule or order, exempts.

21 (c) [**Separate requirement for government securities dealer exemption.**] The  
22 exemptions provided in subsection (b) are not available to a broker-dealer that deals solely in  
23 United States government securities and is not registered under the Securities Exchange Act of  
24 1934 unless the broker-dealer is subject to supervision as a dealer in government securities by the

1 Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

2 (d) [**Limits on employment or association.**] It is unlawful for a broker-dealer, or *for an*  
3 issuer engaged in offering securities in this State, directly or indirectly, to employ or associate  
4 with an individual to engage in any activity [involving securities transactions] in this State if the  
5 registration of the individual is suspended or revoked or the individual is ~~or~~ barred from  
6 employment or association with a broker-dealer, an ~~or~~ issuer [an investment adviser or a federal  
7 covered investment adviser] by an order of the administrator under this [Act], the Securities and  
8 Exchange Commission, or a self-regulatory organization. A broker-dealer or issuer does not  
9 violate this subsection if the broker-dealer or issuer ~~for investment adviser~~ did not know or in  
10 the exercise of reasonable care, could not have known of the suspension, revocation, or bar.  
11 Upon request from a broker-dealer or issuer and for good cause shown, the administrator, by  
12 order, may modify or vacate the prohibition of this subsection. ~~with respect to an individual~~  
13 ~~suspended or barred.~~

## 14 **Comments**

15 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 201; RUSA Sections 201-202.

16 1. “Broker-dealer” is defined in Section 102(4). The scope of the Section 401(a) reference  
17 “to transact business in this State” is specified in Section 610.

18  
19 2. Under Section 401(a) a person can be required to register as a securities broker-dealer only  
20 if the person transacts business in securities. See, e.g., *AMR Realty Co. v. State*, 373 A.2d 1002  
21 (N.J. Supr. Ct. App. Div. 1977) (requirement that the transactions involve securities).

22  
23 3. Under 401(b)(1)(D)-(E) preexisting customers must be bona fide. A principle place of  
24 residence, for example, normally would be the residence where the customer spends a majority of  
25 time. These exemptions were intended to facilitate ongoing broker-customer relationships with  
26 customers who have established a second or other residence for such purposes as a winter  
27 vacation (i.e. “snowbirds”).

28  
29 4. Section 401(d) prohibits a broker-dealer or issuer from employing an individual in a  
30 capacity from which that person has been suspended by the administrator. Violation of this  
31 provision does not result in strict liability. In order for a broker-dealer or issuer to be liable, the  
32 broker-dealer or issuer must have known or should have known of the administrator’s order to  
33 the individual suspended or barred.

1  
2 5. The SIA has proposed a cross-border transaction provision:  
3 The Administrator may adopt rules or orders necessary to permit:

4  
5 (a) A broker-dealer or investment adviser that is resident in a foreign jurisdiction and has  
6 no office or physical presence in this State to, effect transactions in securities with or for, induce  
7 or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of any security by, or provide investment advisory  
8 services to,

9  
10 (1) a person from that foreign jurisdiction who is temporarily resident in this State, with  
11 whom the broker-dealer or investment adviser had a bona fide broker-dealer or investment  
12 adviser client relationship before the person entered the United States;

13  
14 (2) a person from that foreign jurisdiction who is resident in this State, whose transactions are  
15 in a self-directed tax advantaged retirement plan in that foreign jurisdiction of which the person  
16 is the holder or contributor; or

17  
18 (3) a person who is resident in this state, with whom the broker-dealer or investment adviser  
19 client relationship arose while the person was temporarily or permanently resident in the foreign  
20 jurisdiction, and

21  
22 (b) An agent or investment adviser representative who will be representing a broker-dealer or  
23 investment adviser registered under this Section to, effect transactions in securities with or for,  
24 induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of any security by, or provide investment  
25 advisory services in this State as permitted for the broker-dealer or investment adviser in  
26 Subsection (a).

27  
28  
29  
30 **SECTION 402. AGENT REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS.**

31 (a) **[Registration requirement.]** (1) It is unlawful for an individual to transact business  
32 in this State as an agent unless the individual is registered under this [Act] as an agent or is  
33 exempt from registration as provided in subsection (b).

34 (2) It is unlawful for a broker-dealer, or an issuer engaged in offering securities, to  
35 employ or associate with an agent who transacts business in this State on behalf of the broker-  
36 dealer or issuer unless the agent is registered *under Section 402(a)* or exempt from registration  
37 *under Section 402(b).* ~~under this [Act] as an agent.~~

38 (b) **[Exemptions from registration.]** The following agents are exempt from the  
39 registration requirement of subsection (a):

1 (1) an agent acting for a broker-dealer under Section 401(b);

2 (2) an agent acting for an issuer ~~when the agent's compensation is not based in~~  
3 ~~whole or in part upon the amount of purchases or sales of the issuer's own securities, if no~~  
4 ~~commission or other remuneration is paid or given, directly or indirectly, for effecting purchases~~  
5 ~~or sales of the issuer's securities, who;~~

6 (A) effects transactions in a security of the issuer exempted by Section  
7 201; or

8 (B) effects transactions in the issuer's securities exempted by Section 202;  
9 [other than Section 202(9) and (12)];

10 (3) an agent acting for an issuer who effects transactions solely in federal covered  
11 securities of the issuer, except that an agent who effects transactions in a federal covered security  
12 to qualified purchasers in this State under Section 18(b)(3) or 18(b)(4)(D) of the Securities Act of  
13 1933 is not exempt if ~~any~~ a commission or other remuneration is paid or given directly or  
14 indirectly for effecting those transactions;

15 [(4) an agent acting for a broker-dealer registered in this State under Section  
16 401(a) or exempt under Section 401(b) or (c) in the offer and sale of securities for an account  
17 directed by an investment adviser registered in this State or a federal covered investment  
18 adviser;] or

19 (5) any other agent the administrator, by rule or order, exempts.

20 (c) [**Registration effective only while employed or associated.**] The registration of an  
21 agent is not effective while the agent is not employed by or associated with a broker-dealer  
22 registered or exempt from registration under this [Act] or an issuer that offers its securities in this  
23 State.

24 (d) [**Limit on multiple affiliations.**] An individual may not act as an agent for more than

1 one broker-dealer or more than one issuer at a time, unless the broker-dealer or issuer for whom  
2 the agent acts is affiliated by direct or indirect common control or the administrator, by rule or  
3 order, so authorizes.

4  
5 **QUERY:** Does the compensation qualification in Section 402(b)(3) violate NSMIA? Does  
6 Section 18(c) of the 1933 Act limit state authority in Sections 18(b)(3) and 18(b)(4)(D) to such  
7 matters as notice and fees?

8 **Comments**

9  
10 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 201; RUSA Sections 201-202.

11  
12 1. “Agent” is defined in Section 102(2). The scope of the Section 402(a) reference to  
13 “transact business in this State” is specified in Section 610.

14  
15 2. An independent contractor must either be a broker-dealer or an agent if the individual  
16 transacts business as a broker-dealer or agent. There is no other category of activity permitted  
17 under this Act for securities broker-dealer or agent activities.

18  
19 3. A broker-dealer in violation of Section 407(a)(2) may be disciplined under Section 412 or  
20 subject to ~~civil~~ administrative enforcement under Sections 603-604.

21  
22  
23  
24 **SECTION 403. INVESTMENT ADVISER REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT AND**  
25 **EXEMPTIONS.**

26 (a) [**Registration requirement.**] It is unlawful for a person to transact business in this  
27 State as an investment adviser unless registered under this [Act] as an investment adviser or is  
28 exempt from registration as provided in subsection (b).

29 (b) [**Exemptions from registration.**] The following investment advisers are exempt  
30 from the registration requirement of subsection (a):

31 (1) an investment adviser without a place of business in this State that is  
32 registered under the securities act of the State in which the investment adviser has its principal  
33 place of business if its only clients in this State are:

34 (A) federal covered investment advisers, ~~registered~~ investment advisers

1 ~~registered under this [Act], or registered~~ broker-dealers registered under this [Act];

2 (B) institutional investors;

3 (C) preexisting clients whose principal place of residence is not in this  
4 State if the investment adviser is registered under the securities act of the State in which the  
5 client maintains a principal place of residence; or

6 (D) any other client the administrator, by rule or order, specifies;

7 (2) an investment adviser without a place of business in this State if it has had,  
8 during the preceding 12 months, not more than five clients who are residents of this State in  
9 addition to those specified under paragraph (1); and

10 (3) any other investment adviser the administrator, by rule or order, exempts.

11 (c) **[Limits on employment or association.]** It is unlawful for an investment adviser,  
12 directly or indirectly, to employ or associate with an individual ~~to engage in any activity~~ *who*  
13 *engages in an activity involving investment advice* in this State if the registration of the  
14 individual is suspended or revoked, or the individual is barred from employment or association  
15 with an investment adviser, federal covered investment adviser, [or a broker-dealer] by an order  
16 of the administrator, unless the investment adviser [or broker-dealer] did not know, or in the  
17 exercise of reasonable care, could not have known, of the suspension, revocation, or bar. Upon  
18 request from the investment adviser and for good cause shown, the administrator, by order, may  
19 waive the prohibition of this subsection ~~with respect to the individual suspended or barred.~~

20 (d) **[Requirements as to investment adviser representative registration required.]** It  
21 is unlawful for any investment adviser to employ or associate with an investment adviser  
22 representative who transacts business in this State on behalf of the investment adviser unless the  
23 investment adviser representative is registered *under Section 404(a)* or exempt from registration  
24 as ~~[provided subsection (b) under this [Act] as an investment adviser representative.~~ *under*

2 **Comments**

3 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 201; RUSA Sections 203-204.

4 1. “Investment adviser” is defined in Section 102(15). The scope of the Section 403(a)  
5 reference to “transact business in this State” is specified in Section 610.

6  
7 2. Excluded from the definition of investment adviser in Section 102(15)(C) is a broker-  
8 dealer who receives no special compensation for investment advisory services. Such a broker-  
9 dealer would not have to register in two different capacities in this State. A broker-dealer who  
10 does receive special compensation, on the other hand, would also meet the statutory definition of  
11 investment adviser and would be required to register in both capacities.

12  
13 3. Section 403(b)(2) is required by the National Securities Markets Improvement Act of  
14 1996 which prohibits a state from regulating an investment adviser that does not have a place of  
15 business in this State and had fewer than six clients who are state residents during the preceding  
16 12 months.

17  
18 4. Section 403(c) prohibits an investment adviser from employing an individual who is  
19 prohibited from such employment or association by the administrator. Violation of this provision  
20 does not result in strict liability. To be liable the investment adviser must have known or should  
21 have known of the administrator’s order to the individual suspended or barred.

22  
23  
24 **SECTION 404. INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVE REGISTRATION**  
25 **REQUIREMENT AND EXEMPTIONS.**

26 (a) [**Registration requirement.**] It is unlawful for an individual to transact business in  
27 this State as an investment adviser representative unless the individual is registered under this  
28 [Act] as an investment adviser representative or is exempt from registration under subsection (b).

29 (b) [**Exemptions from registration.**] The following investment adviser representatives  
30 are exempt from the registration requirement of subsection (a):

31 (1) an investment adviser representative who is employed by or associated with an  
32 investment adviser that is exempt from registration under Section 403(b) or a federal covered  
33 investment adviser that is exempt from the notice filing requirements of Section 405; and

34 (2) any other investment adviser representative who the administrator, by rule or

1 order, exempts.

2 ~~(d)~~(c) [**Registration effective only while employed or associated.**] The registration of  
3 an investment adviser representative is not effective while the investment adviser representative  
4 is not employed by or associated with an investment adviser registered under this [Act] or a  
5 federal covered investment adviser that has made or is required to make a notice filing under  
6 Section 405.

7 ~~(e)~~(d) [**Limit on multiple affiliations.**] An individual may not act as an investment  
8 adviser representative for more than one investment adviser at a time unless the administrator, by  
9 rule or order, so authorizes.

10 ~~(f)~~(e) [**Limits on employment or association.**] ~~It is unlawful for an investment adviser~~  
11 ~~representative, directly or indirectly, to conduct business on behalf of a federal covered~~  
12 ~~investment adviser in this State, if the investment adviser representative is barred or suspended~~  
13 ~~from employment or association with an investment adviser by an order of the administrator~~  
14 ~~under this [Act]. Upon request from the federal covered investment adviser and for good cause~~  
15 ~~shown, the administrator, by order, may waive the prohibition of this subsection with respect to~~  
16 ~~the person barred or suspended.] It is unlawful for an individual acting as an investment adviser~~  
17 ~~representative, directly or indirectly, to conduct business in this State on behalf of a federal~~  
18 ~~covered investment adviser if the requirement registration of the investment adviser~~  
19 ~~representative is suspended or revoked or the individual is barred from employment or~~  
20 ~~association with an investment adviser or a federal covered investment adviser by an order of the~~  
21 ~~administrator under this [Act], the Securities and Exchange Commission, or a self-regulatory~~  
22 ~~organization. Upon request from a federal covered investment adviser and for good cause~~  
23 ~~shown, the administrator, by order, may waive the prohibition of this subsection.~~

24 **Comments**

1 No Prior Provision.

2 QUERIES:

3 (1) Pennsylvania urges adding “an investment adviser representative with a place of  
4 business in this state that is employed by or associated with a federal covered investment  
5 adviser” in Section 404.

6  
7 (2) The FPA strongly supports permitting at least two IA affiliations under Section 404(e).  
8 As a lesser alternative to expressly allowing dual registration, the FPA requests that the draft not  
9 include Section 404(e).

10  
11 1. “Investment adviser representative” is defined in Section 102(16). The scope of the  
12 Section 404(a) reference to “transacts business in this State” is specified in Section 610.

13  
14 2. Neither the 1956 Act nor RUSA provided for the registration of investment adviser  
15 representatives. In recent years, however, the states increasingly have done so.

16  
17 3. Under this Act a sole proprietor investment adviser may register both as an investment  
18 adviser and as an investment adviser representative.

19  
20 4. Section 404(c) prohibits an investment adviser representative from association with a  
21 federal covered investment adviser when such association is prohibited by an order of the  
22 administrator. Unlike similar provisions in Sections 401 and 403, there is no culpability  
23 requirement that the investment adviser representative “knows or in the exercise of reasonable  
24 care should have known” of a suspension or bar because the order should be received by the  
25 investment adviser representative. As with Sections 401 and 403, the administrator may waive  
26 this prohibition.

27  
28  
29  
30 **SECTION 405. FEDERAL COVERED INVESTMENT ADVISER NOTICE FILING**  
31 **REQUIREMENT.**

32 (a) [Notice filing requirement.] Except with respect to a federal covered investment  
33 adviser described in subsection (b), it is unlawful for a federal covered investment adviser to  
34 transact business in this State unless the federal covered investment adviser complies with  
35 subsection (c). ~~whose only clients are those described in Section 403(b)(1)(A), (B), and (D), it is~~  
36 ~~unlawful for a federal covered investment adviser to transact business in this State unless the~~  
37 ~~federal covered investment adviser complies with subsections (b) and (c).~~

38 (b) [Exclusions to notice filing procedure.] The following federal covered investment

1 ~~advisers are not required to comply with subsection (c): A federal covered investment adviser~~  
2 ~~shall file a notice before acting in this State as a nonexempt federal covered investment adviser in~~  
3 ~~this State that is not excepted under subsection (a), by filing such records as have been filed with~~  
4 ~~the Securities and Exchange Commission under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, including~~  
5 ~~a consent to service of process, as the administrator, by rule or order, requires, and an annual~~  
6 ~~notice fee of [\$\_\_\_\_\_].~~

7 (1) a federal covered investment adviser without a place of business in this State if  
8 its only clients in this State are:

9 (A) federal covered investment advisers, investment advisers registered  
10 under this Act, or broker-dealers registered under this Act;

11 (B) institutional investors;

12 (C) other bona fide clients whose principal place of residence is not in this  
13 State; and

14 (D) other clients the administrator, by rule or order, specifies;

15 (2) a federal covered investment adviser without a place of business in this State if  
16 it has had, during the preceding 12 months, not more than five clients who are residents of this  
17 State in addition to those specified under paragraph (1); and

18 (3) any other federal covered investment adviser the administrator, by rule or  
19 order, specifies.

20 (c) [Notice filing procedure.] ~~The administrator may require a federal covered~~  
21 ~~investment adviser that is not excepted under subsection (a) to provide a copy of any additional~~  
22 ~~record regarding the federal covered investment adviser that has been filed with the Securities~~  
23 ~~and Exchange Commission under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940. A federal covered~~  
24 investment adviser, required to file a notice under this Section, shall file with the administrator

1 such records, including a consent to service of process, as have been filed with the Securities and  
2 Exchange Commission under the Investment Advisors Act of 1940, as the administrator, by rule  
3 or order, requires and an initial and annual notice fee of [ \$ \_\_\_\_ ].

4 (d) [Effectiveness of filing.] The notice filing is effective upon its filing.

5  
6 ~~QUERY: Given Section 405(b), do we need Section 405(c)?~~

7 **Comments**

8 No Prior Provision.

9 1. “Federal covered investment adviser” is defined in Section 102(6). The scope of the  
10 Section 405(a) reference to “transacts business in this State” is specified in Section 610.

11  
12 2. This provision is necessitated by the National Securities Markets Improvement Act of  
13 1996 and is intended to coordinate this Act with the Investment Advisors Act of 1940.

14  
15  
16  
17 **SECTION 406. REGISTRATION BY BROKER-DEALERS, AGENTS,**  
18 **INVESTMENT ADVISERS, AND INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVES.**

19 (a) [**Initial registration.**] A broker-dealer, agent, investment adviser, or investment  
20 adviser representative shall register by filing an application ~~including~~ and a consent to service of  
21 process complying with Section 611~~2~~, and paying the fee specified in ~~subsection (d)~~ *Section 410*  
22 and any reasonable costs charged by the designee of the administrator for processing the filing.—

23 ~~The following rules shall apply:~~

24 (1) Each application must contain the information required for the filing of a  
25 uniform application; and

26 (2) Any other financial or other information requested by the administrator that  
27 the administrator determines is appropriate, whether required in a uniform application or not, by  
28 ~~the administrator that is material to an understanding of information in the uniform application~~

1 and whatever other information, to the extent not contained in the uniform application, the  
2 administrator, by rule or order, requires, including any of the following:

3 (A) the applicant's form and place of organization;

4 (B) the applicant's proposed method of doing business;

5 (C) the qualifications and business history of the applicant, and in the case  
6 of the broker-dealers or investment adviser, the qualifications and business history of each  
7 partner, officer, or director, or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar  
8 functions, and any person directly or indirectly controlling the broker-dealer or investment  
9 adviser;

10 (D) any injunction or administrative order or conviction of a misdemeanor  
11 involving securities or commodities or an aspect of the securities or commodities business or a  
12 felony of the applicant or a person specified in subparagraph (C);

13 (E) the applicant's financial condition and history;

14 (F) if the applicant is an investment adviser, any information concerning  
15 the investment adviser to be furnished or disseminated to a client or prospective client; and

16 (G) any other information that the administrator determines is material to  
17 the application.

18 (3)(b) [**Effectiveness of registration.**] If an order is not in effect and no proceeding is  
19 pending under Section 408 412, registration is effective at noon on the 45th day after a completed  
20 application is filed. The administrator, by rule or order, may specify an earlier effective date and  
21 may, by order, defer the effective date until noon on the 45th day after the filing of any  
22 amendment completing the application.

23 (4)(c) [**Registration renewal.**] Each registration is effective until midnight on  
24 December 31 of the year for which the application for registration is filed. A registration may be

1 automatically renewed each year unless an order is in effect under Section ~~408~~ 412, by filing  
2 such records as the administrator, by rule or order, specifies and paying the fee specified in  
3 ~~subsection (d) Section 410~~; and ~~paying~~ costs charged by the designee of the administrator for  
4 processing such filings.

5 [(d) [Dual agent/investment adviser representative.] An investment adviser  
6 representative who is registered as an agent under Section 402 and who is acting for a person  
7 which is both registered as a broker-dealer under Section 401 and either registered as an  
8 Investment Adviser under Section 403 or required to file as a federal covered investment adviser  
9 under Section 405 shall only be required to file a single combined application for registration and  
10 pay a single fee.]

#### 11 **Comments**

12 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 202; RUSA Section 205(b).

13  
14 1. Under Section 406(a), the administrator is authorized to accept standardized forms such as  
15 Form B-D for broker-dealers; Form U-4 for agents and investment adviser representatives; and  
16 Form ADV for investment advisers, which are filed today through such designees as the Web-  
17 CRD or the Investment Adviser Registration Depository.

18  
19 2. Under this Act a single person may act both as an agent and investment adviser  
20 representative if the person satisfies applicable requirements to be both an agent and investment  
21 adviser representative.  
22

#### 23 **SECTION 407. SUCCESSION AND CHANGE IN REGISTRATION.**

24  
25  
26  
27 ~~(5)~~(a) **[Succession.]** A broker-dealer or investment adviser may succeed to the current  
28 registration of another broker-dealer or investment adviser, or a notice filing of a federal covered  
29 investment adviser and a federal covered investment adviser may succeed to the current  
30 registration of an investment adviser or the notice filing of another federal covered investment  
31 adviser, by filing as a successor an application for registration as required by Section 401 or 403,  
32 or a notice filing as required by Section 405, for the unexpired portion of the year of the current

1 registration or notice filing.

2 (h)(b) [**Organizational change.**] A broker-dealer or investment adviser may change its  
3 form of organization, date or State of incorporation or formation, or ~~composition~~ of membership  
4 in a ~~partnership or limited liability company~~ by amendments to its registration if the change does  
5 not involve any material change in its financial condition or management. The amendment ~~will~~  
6 ~~become~~ is effective when filed or upon a date designated by the registrant in its filing. The new  
7 entity is a successor to the original registrant for the purposes of this [Act]. A material change in  
8 financial condition or management ~~shall~~ requires a new application for registration as a broker-  
9 dealer or investment adviser. Any registered predecessor shall discontinue conducting its  
10 securities business other than winding down transactions and shall file for withdrawal of broker-  
11 dealer or investment adviser registration within 45 days after filing its amendment to effect  
12 succession.

13 (i)(c) [**Name and control change.**] A broker-dealer or investment adviser may change its  
14 name by amendment to its registration. The amendment becomes effective when filed or upon a  
15 date designated by the registrant.

16 (d) [**Change of control.**] A change of control of a broker-dealer or ~~investment adviser~~ is  
17 effective upon the filing of an amendment to its registration identifying the new controlling  
18 person and a letter explaining the background of the transaction and certifying that the new  
19 control person has complied with applicable filing requirements of ~~the National Association of~~  
20 ~~Securities Dealers~~ a self-regulatory organization to effect a change of control. The amendment  
21 ~~will~~ becomes effective when the amendment and letter have been filed with the administrator or  
22 upon a subsequent date designated by the registrant in its amendment.

23 (e) There is no fee for filing under this Section.

1           **SECTION 408. TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT OF AGENTS AND**  
2 **INVESTMENT ADVISER REPRESENTATIVES.**

3           ~~(a)~~ ~~(b)(a)~~ ~~[Termination of employment]~~ **[Notice of Termination.]** If an agent registered  
4 under this [Act] a ~~registered agent~~ terminates employment by or association with a broker-dealer  
5 or issuer, or if an ~~registered~~ investment adviser representative ~~registered under this [Act]~~  
6 terminates employment by or association with an investment adviser or federal covered  
7 investment adviser, or if either registrant terminates activities that require registration as an agent  
8 or investment adviser representative, a notice of termination shall promptly be filed by the  
9 relevant broker-dealer, issuer, investment adviser, or federal covered investment adviser. If the  
10 registrant learns that the relevant broker-dealer, issuer, investment adviser, or federal covered  
11 investment adviser fails to file the notice, the registrant shall do so. ~~representative shall promptly~~  
12 ~~file a notice. , the registrant may do so, if the registrant fails to do so. The following rules sh~~ The  
13 ~~notice shall be filed by the relevant broker-dealer, issuer, investment adviser, or federal covered~~  
14 ~~investment adviser a~~ if the relevant broker-dealer, issuer, investment adviser, or federal covered  
15 investment adviser fails to file the notice all apply:

16           ~~/(1) When an agent terminates employment by or association with a registered~~  
17 ~~broker-dealer or an issuer, and within 30 days begins employment by or association with another~~  
18 ~~registered broker-dealer or an issuer, the registration of the agent is immediately effective upon~~  
19 ~~payment of the filing fee specified in subsection (d) Section 410.]~~

20           ~~/(2) When an investment adviser representative terminates employment by or~~  
21 ~~association with a registered investment adviser, and within 30 days begins employment with or~~  
22 ~~association with another registered investment adviser, the registration of the investment adviser~~  
23 ~~representative is immediately effective upon payment of the filing fee specified in subsection (d)~~  
24 ~~. Section 410.]~~

1           **(b) [Expedited re-registration.]** If an agent registered under this [Act] terminates  
2 employment by or association with a broker-dealer registered under this [Act] and begins  
3 employment by or association with another broker-dealer registered under this [Act], [or if an  
4 investment adviser representative registered under this [Act] terminates employment by or  
5 association with an investment adviser registered under this [Act] or a federal covered  
6 investment adviser and begins employment by or association with another investment adviser  
7 registered under this [Act] or a federal covered investment adviser,] the following applies. Upon  
8 filing by or on behalf of the registrant, within 30 days after the termination, of an application for  
9 registration that complies with the requirement of Section 406(a), and payment of the filing fee  
10 required under Section 410, the registration of the agent [or investment adviser representative] is:

11                   (1) immediately effective as of the date the new employment or association began,  
12 if the agent’s “CRD record” [or the investment adviser representative’s “IARD record”] contains  
13 no new or amended disciplinary disclosure since the registrant was last registered under this  
14 [Act]; or

15                   (2) temporarily effective as of the date the new employment or association began,  
16 if the agent’s “CRD record” [or the investment adviser representative’s “IARD record”] contains  
17 a new or amended disciplinary disclosure since the registrant was last registered under this [Act].  
18 The administrator may withdraw the temporary registration [if there were grounds for discipline  
19 under Section 412] and the administrator does so within 30 days after the filing of the  
20 application. If the administrator does not so withdraw the temporary registration, registration  
21 becomes automatically effective on the 31st day after filing.]

22           ~~(a)~~ ~~(c)~~ **[Termination of registration.]** ~~(1)~~ If the administrator determines that a registrant  
23 or applicant for registration is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a broker-  
24 dealer, agent, investment adviser, or investment adviser representative, or is the subject of an

1 adjudication of mental incompetence or is subject to the control of a committee, conservator, or  
2 guardian, or cannot reasonably be located, the administrator, by rule or order, may cancel or  
3 ~~suspend~~ terminate the registration or ~~cancel~~ or deny the application. The administrator may  
4 reinstate a canceled or ~~revoked~~ terminated registration, with or without hearing, and may make  
5 such registration retroactive.

6  
7 *SECTION 409. WITHDRAWAL OF REGISTRATION OF BROKER-DEALERS,*  
8 *AGENTS, INVESTMENT ADVISERS, AND INVESTMENT ADVISERS*  
9 *REPRESENTATIVES.*

10 (2) Withdrawal ~~from~~ *of* registration ~~as~~ *by* a broker-dealer, agent, investment adviser, or  
11 investment adviser representative becomes effective ~~30~~ 60 days after filing of an application to  
12 withdraw or within such shorter time *as* the administrator, by rule or order, specifies, unless a  
13 revocation or suspension proceeding is pending when the application is filed. If a proceeding is  
14 pending, withdrawal becomes effective when and upon such conditions as the administrator, by  
15 rule or order, specifies. If no proceeding is pending or instituted and withdrawal automatically  
16 becomes effective, the administrator may nevertheless institute a revocation or suspension  
17 proceeding under Section ~~408~~ *412* within one year after withdrawal became automatically  
18 effective and enter a revocation or suspension order as of the last date on which registration was  
19 effective.

20  
21 *SECTION 410. FILING FEES.*

22 (1) (a) [**Broker-dealers.**] A broker-dealer shall pay a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when initially filing  
23 an application for registration, and a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when filing a renewal of registration. If the  
24 application or renewal is denied or withdrawn, the administrator shall retain [\$\_\_\_] of the fee.

1           (2) (b) [Agents.] An agent shall pay a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when filing an application for  
2 registration, a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when filing a renewal of registration, and a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when  
3 filing for a transfer of registration. If the application, renewal, or transfer is denied or withdrawn,  
4 the administrator shall retain [\$\_\_\_] of the fee.

5           (3) (c) [Investment advisers.] An investment adviser shall pay a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when  
6 filing an application for registration, and a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when filing a renewal of registration. If  
7 the application or renewal is denied or withdrawn, the administrator shall retain [\$\_\_\_] of the fee.

8           (4) (d) [Investment adviser representatives.] An investment adviser representative  
9 shall pay a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when filing an application for registration, a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when filing a  
10 renewal of registration, and a fee of [\$\_\_\_] when filing a transfer of registration. If the  
11 application, renewal or transfer is denied or withdrawn, the administrator shall retain [\$\_\_\_] of  
12 the fee.

13           (6) (e) [Payment.] A person required to pay a [filing or notice] fee under this section or  
14 Section 405(b) may transmit the fee through or to a designee that the administrator, by rule or  
15 order, specifies.

17           ~~SECTION 409. SUBSTANTIVE REQUISITIONS.~~ **411. POSTREGISTRATION**  
18 **REQUIREMENTS.**

19           (6)(a) [Financial standard.] *Except as limited by Section 15(h) of the Securities*  
20 *Exchange Act of 1934 or Section 222 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940*, the administrator,  
21 by rule or order, may establish minimum financial requirements for registered broker-dealers  
22 registered under this [Act] ~~and subject to Section 15(h) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934,~~  
23 ~~and establish minimum financial requirements for investment advisers registered under this~~  
24 ~~[Act]; limited to Section 222 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940.~~

1           ~~(d)~~(b) [**Financial reports.**] Except as limited by Section 15(h) of the Securities  
2 Exchange Act of 1934 or Section 222(b) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 a ~~registered~~  
3 broker-dealer registered under this [Act] and an ~~registered~~ investment adviser registered under  
4 this [Act] shall file such financial reports as the administrator, by rule or order, ~~prescribes~~  
5 specifies.

6           ~~(a)~~(c) [**Recordkeeping.**]~~(+)~~ Except as limited by Section 15(h) of the Securities  
7 Exchange Act of 1934 ~~and~~ *or* Section 222 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940:

8                   (1) a ~~registered~~ broker-dealer registered under this [Act] and an ~~registered~~  
9 investment adviser registered under this [Act] shall make and ~~keep~~ maintain the accounts,  
10 correspondence, memoranda, papers, books, and other records the administrator, by rule or order,  
11 specifies; and

12                   ~~(2)~~ required broker-dealer records required to be maintained under paragraph (1)  
13 may be maintained in any form of data storage acceptable under Section 17(a) of the Securities  
14 Exchange Act of 1934 if they are readily accessible to the administrator.

15                   ~~(3)~~ Investment adviser records required to be required under paragraph (1) may be  
16 maintained in any form of data storage that the administrator, by rule or order, specifies.

17           ~~(b)~~(d) [**Examinations Audits or Inspections.**] The records of a ~~registered~~ broker-  
18 dealer registered under this [Act] and an ~~registered~~ investment adviser registered under this [Act]  
19 are subject to such ~~reasonable~~ periodic, special, or other audits or examinations inspections by a  
20 representative of the administrator within or without this State as the administrator considers  
21 necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors. An  
22 ~~examination~~ audit or inspection may be made at any time and without prior notice. The  
23 administrator may copy; and remove for ~~examination; purposes;~~ copies of all records the  
24 administrator ~~reasonably~~ considers necessary or appropriate to conduct the ~~examination~~ audit or

1 inspection. The administrator may ~~impose~~ assess a reasonable ~~fee~~ cost for conducting an  
2 ~~examination~~ audit or inspection under this subsection.

3 ~~(f)~~ (e) [~~Custody and discretionary authority bond.~~] Except as limited by Section 15(h) of  
4 the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 ~~and or~~ Section 222 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940,  
5 the administrator, by rule or order, may require each broker-dealer and investment adviser that  
6 has custody of or discretionary authority over funds or securities of a client to obtain insurance,  
7 or post a bond or other satisfactory form of security in an amount not to exceed [\$\_\_\_\_\_], ~~as the~~  
8 ~~administrator, by rule or order, specifies.~~ subject to The administrator may determine the  
9 ~~conditions~~ requirements of the insurance or bond or other satisfactory form of security.  
10 Insurance or a bond or other satisfactory form of security may not be required of a registrant  
11 whose net capital, or, in the case of an investment adviser whose minimum financial  
12 requirements, ~~which the administrator, by rule or order, may specify,~~ exceeds the amount  
13 ~~required~~ specified by the administrator, by rule or order. ~~Each~~ Each insurance policy or bond  
14 or other satisfactory form of security must permit an action by a person ~~who~~ has a claim under  
15 Section 509, to enforce any liability on the insurance or bond, and must provide that an action  
16 may not be maintained to enforce any liability on the insurance or bond unless commenced  
17 within the time limitations ~~of~~ under Section 509~~(f)~~(j). The administrator may, by rule or order,  
18 prohibit, limit, or impose conditions upon an investment adviser on retaining custody of  
19 securities or funds of a client.

20 ~~(g)~~ (f) [~~Custody rules.~~] Except as limited by Section 15(h) of the Securities Exchange  
21 Act of 1934 or Section 222 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, ~~An~~ agent may not have  
22 custody ~~over~~ of funds or securities of a customer except under the supervision of a broker-dealer;  
23 and an investment adviser representative may not have custody over funds or securities of a client  
24 except under the supervision of an investment adviser or federal covered investment adviser.

1 The administrator, by rule or order, may prohibit, limit, or impose conditions on an agent from  
2 having custody of funds or securities of a customer and on an investment adviser from having  
3 custody of securities or funds of a client.

4 (f)(g) [Investment advisers brochure rule.] With respect to an ~~a registered~~ investment  
5 adviser registered under this [Act], the administrator, by rule or order, may require that  
6 information be furnished or disseminated to clients or prospective clients in this State as  
7 necessary or appropriate in the public interest ~~or~~ *and* for the protection of investors and advisory  
8 clients.

### 9 **Comments**

10 **Prior Provisions:** NASAA 1986, 1997; and 2000 Amendments to 1956  
11 Act Section 203; RUSA Section 205(b).

12  
13 1. In Section 411(a) minimum financial requirements refers, as delineated in Section 15(h) of  
14 the Securities Exchange Act, to “capital, custody, margin, financial responsibility, making and  
15 keeping records, bonding, or financial or operational reporting requirements.”

16  
17 2. Minimum financial requirements must be maintained during the entire time a person is  
18 registered and not merely at the time of the registration. See, e.g., National Grange Mut. Ins. Co.  
19 v. Prioleau, 236 S.E.2d 808 (S.C. 1977) (continuing bond requirement); Ridgeway, McLeod &  
20 Assoc., 281 A.2d 390 (N.J. Super. Ct. App. Div. 1971) (continuing minimum capital  
21 requirement).

22  
23 3. Section 612 encourages uniformity of application and construction of this Act among  
24 States and with related federal laws and regulations.

25  
26 4. Section 411(b)(1) authorizes the administrator to require all records to be preserved for the  
27 period the administrator prescribes by rule or order.

28  
29 5. The duty in Section 411(b)(2) to correct or update information is limited to information  
30 which a reasonable investor would continue to consider important in deciding whether to  
31 purchase or sell securities. Cf. TSC Indus., Inc. v. Northway, Inc., 426 U.S. 438, 444-450  
32 (1970); Securities Act Release No. 6084, 17 SEC Dock. 1048, 1054 (1979) (“persons are  
33 continuing to rely on all or any material portion of the statements”).

34  
35 6. Rule 17a-4 is the current Rule under Section 17(a) of the Securities Exchange Act referred  
36 to in Section 411(b)(2) that addresses acceptable forms of data storage.  
37

1 7. The administrator's power to copy and examine records in Section 411(c) is subject to all  
2 applicable privileges. See, e.g., 10 L. Loss & J. Seligman, Securities Regulation 4921-4925 n.69  
3 (3d ed. rev. 1996).

4  
5  
6  
7 **SECTION ~~408~~ 412. DENIAL, REVOCATION, SUSPENSION, CANCELLATION,**  
8 **WITHDRAWAL, RESTRICTION, CONDITION, OR LIMITATION OF**  
9 **REGISTRATION.**

10 (a) ~~[Disciplinary Standards.] The administrator, by order, may deny, revoke, suspend,~~  
11 ~~restrict, condition, or limit an application or registration of a broker-dealer, agent, investment~~  
12 ~~adviser, or investment adviser representative [or censure, bar, or impose a civil penalty upon a~~  
13 ~~registered broker-dealer, agent, investment adviser, or investment adviser representative] if the~~  
14 ~~administrator finds:~~

15 (a) [Disciplinary Conditions- Applicants.] The administrator, by order, may deny,  
16 restrict, condition, or limit an application for registration of a broker-dealer, agent, investment  
17 adviser, or investment adviser representative if the administrator finds that the order is in the  
18 public interest. The following rules apply:

19 (1) In determining what action to take on an application for registration, the  
20 administrator may consider the factors set forth in subparagraphs (d)(1)-(9) or (11)-(13).

21 (2) The administrator must act within the time frame set forth in Section 406(b).

22 (b) [Disciplinary Conditions – Registrants.] The administrator, by order may revoke,  
23 suspend, condition, or limit the registration of a current registrant if the administrator finds that  
24 the order is in the public interest. The following rules apply:

25 (1) In determining whether to take such action, the administrator may consider the  
26 factors set forth in subparagraphs (d) (1)-(14).

1           (2) The administrator may not commence a revocation or suspension proceeding  
2 under this subsection based on an order issued by another jurisdiction more than one year after  
3 the date of the order relied on.

4           (3) Under subsections (d)(5)(A) through (D) the administrator may not enter an  
5 order on the basis of an order under the state securities act of another state unless the other order  
6 was based on facts that would constitute a ground for an order under this section.

7           (c) [Disciplinary Penalties – Registrants.] The administrator, by order, may impose a  
8 censure or bar, or impose a civil penalty on a current registrant if the administrator finds that the  
9 order is in the public interest. The following rules apply:

10           (1) In determining whether to take such action, the administrator may consider the  
11 factors set forth in subparagraphs (d)(1)-(6), (9)-(10) or (12)-(14).

12           (2) The administrator may not enter an order under this subsection unless the other  
13 order is based on acts that occurred in this state and is based on facts that would constitute a  
14 ground for an order under this section.

15           ~~(1) that the order is in the public interest; and~~

16           ~~(2) (d) that~~ The applicant or registrant:

17           ~~(A)~~(1) within the past 10 years has filed an application for registration under this  
18 [Act] or the predecessor act in this State which, as of its effective date or as of any date after  
19 filing in the case of an order denying effectiveness, was incomplete in any material respect or  
20 contained a statement that, in light of the circumstances under which it was made, was false or  
21 misleading with respect to a material fact;

22           ~~(B)~~(2) within the past 10 years has willfully violated or willfully failed to comply  
23 with this [Act] or the predecessor act or a rule adopted or order issued under this [Act] or the  
24 predecessor act;

1           (Ⓒ)(3) has been convicted of a any felony or within the past 10 years has been  
2 convicted of a misdemeanor involving a security, a commodity futures or option contract, or ~~an~~  
3 ~~any aspect of a business involving the securities, or commodities, or other business involving~~  
4 investments, franchises, insurance, banking, or finance;

5           (Ⓓ)(4) is enjoined or restrained by a court of competent jurisdiction in an action  
6 commenced by the administrator, a State, the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the  
7 United States from engaging in or continuing an act or practice involving an aspect of a business  
8 involving the securities, or commodities business, or other business investments, franchises,  
9 insurance, banking, or finance;

10           (Ⓔ)(5) is the subject of an order, entered after notice and opportunity for hearing:

11           (i)(A) by the securities, depository institution, or other financial services  
12 regulator of a State or by the Securities and Exchange Commission denying, revoking, or  
13 suspending registration as a broker-dealer, agent, investment adviser, federal covered investment  
14 adviser, or investment adviser representative;

15           (ii)(B) by the securities regulator of a State or by the Securities and  
16 Exchange Commission against a broker-dealer, ~~or an investment adviser~~ or a federal covered  
17 investment adviser;

18           (iii)(C) by the Securities and Exchange Commission or by a self-regulatory  
19 organization suspending or expelling the registrant from membership in a self-regulatory  
20 organization; or

21           (iv) (D) by a court as adjudicating a United States Postal Service fraud;

22           (Ⓕ)(6) is the subject of an adjudication or determination, after notice and  
23 opportunity for hearing, by the Securities and Exchange Commission, the Commodity Futures  
24 Trading Commission, the Federal Trade Commission, federal depository institution regulator or

1 securities, depository institution, insurance, or other financial services regulator of ~~another~~ any  
2 State that the person has willfully violated the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange  
3 Act of 1934, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, or the  
4 Commodity Exchange Act, the securities or commodities law of ~~another~~ any State, or a federal or  
5 state law under which a business involving investments, franchises, insurance, banking, or  
6 finance is regulated;

7 ~~(G)(7)~~ is insolvent, either in the sense that the person's liabilities exceed the  
8 person's assets or in the sense that the person cannot meet the person's obligations as they  
9 mature, but the administrator may not enter an order against an applicant or registrant under this  
10 subparagraph without a finding of insolvency as to the applicant or registrant;

11 ~~(H)(8)~~ is not qualified on the basis of factors such as training, experience, and  
12 knowledge of the securities business, except that in the case of an application by an agent for a  
13 broker-dealer that is a member of a self-regulatory organization or an investment adviser  
14 representative, no denial order may be based on this subparagraph if the individual has  
15 successfully completed all examinations required by subsection (e); ~~as otherwise provided in~~  
16 ~~subsection (c);~~

17 ~~(I)(9)~~ within the past 10 years has failed to supervise reasonably an agent,  
18 investment adviser representative, or other individual, if the agent, investment adviser  
19 representative, or other individual was subject to the person's supervision and committed a  
20 violation of this [Act] or the predecessor act or a rule adopted or order issued under this [Act] or  
21 the predecessor act;

22 ~~(J)(10) after notice,~~ failed to pay the proper filing fee within 30 days after ~~being~~  
23 having been notified by the administrator of a deficiency, but the administrator shall vacate an  
24 order under this subparagraph when the deficiency is corrected;

1           ~~(K)~~(11) within the past 10 years has ~~been found~~, after notice and opportunity for a  
2 hearing ~~to have been~~:

3           ~~(i)~~ (A) *found by a court of competent jurisdiction to have* willfully violated  
4 the law of a foreign jurisdiction under which the business of commodities, investment,  
5 franchises, insurance, ~~or~~ banking or finance is regulated;

6           ~~(ii)~~(B) found to have been the subject of an order of a securities regulator  
7 of a foreign jurisdiction denying, revoking, or suspending the right to engage in the business of  
8 securities as a broker-dealer, agent, investment adviser, ~~or investment adviser representative or~~  
9 similar individuals or persons; or

10           ~~(iii)~~(C) found *to have* been suspended or expelled from membership by or  
11 participation in a securities exchange or securities association operating under the ~~authority of the~~  
12 securities ~~regulator~~ laws of a foreign jurisdiction;

13           ~~(L)~~(12) is the subject of a cease and desist order issued by the Securities and  
14 Exchange Commission or issued under the securities or commodities laws of a State; ~~or~~

15           ~~(M)~~(13) within the past 10 years has engaged in dishonest or unethical practices in  
16 the securities or commodities business; *or*

17           ~~(N)~~(14) refuses to allow or otherwise impedes the administrator from conducting  
18 an audit ~~examination~~ or inspection under Section 411(d) or refuses access to any registrant's  
19 office to conduct an audit; ~~examination~~ or inspection.

20           (e) [Examinations.] The administrator, by rule or order, may require successful  
21 completion that an of an examination, including an examination developed or approved by an  
22 organization of securities administrators, be taken by any class of or all ~~applicants~~ individuals.  
23 The administrator, by rule or order, may waive ~~the~~ any examination as to ~~a person~~ an individual  
24 or class of ~~persons~~ individuals if the administrator determines that the examination is not

1 necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

2 ~~(d) [Summary Process.] The administrator, by order, may summarily condition,~~  
3 ~~postpone, suspend, or limit registration pending final determination of a proceeding under this~~  
4 ~~section.~~

5 ~~(e)(f) [Due Process.] An order may not be issued under this section except under~~  
6 ~~subsection (d) without: except in compliance with Sections 604. (1) appropriate notice~~  
7 ~~to the applicant or registrant, and, if the applicant or registrant is an agent or investment adviser~~  
8 ~~representative, the employer or prospective employer;~~

9 ~~(2) opportunity for hearing; and~~

10 ~~(3) findings of fact and conclusions of law in a record [in accordance with the state~~  
11 ~~administrative procedure act].~~

12 ~~(f)(g) [Control person liability.] The administrator, by order, may deny, the application~~  
13 ~~or revoke, suspend, restrict, or limit the application or registration of a person that, directly or~~  
14 ~~indirectly, controls a person not in compliance with a provision of this section to the same extent~~  
15 ~~as the noncomplying person, unless the controlling person acted in good faith and did not directly~~  
16 ~~or indirectly induce the act, practice, or course of business constituting the violation.~~

## 17 **Comments**

18 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 204, NASAA 1981, 1986, 1987, 1992, and 1994  
19 proposed Amendments; RUSA Sections 212-214.

- 20
- 21 1. Under Sections 603-604 the administrator may seek other remedies.
- 22
- 23 2. Section 412 authorizes the administrator to seek a sanction based on the seriousness of the
- 24 misconduct.
- 25
- 26 3. The term “foreign” means a jurisdiction outside of the United States, not a different state
- 27 within the United States.
- 28
- 29 4. There is no time limit or statute of limitations on felony violations in Section 412(d)(3).
- 30
- 31 5. Under Section 412 the administrator must prove that the denial, revocation, suspension,

1 cancellation, withdrawal, restriction, condition, or limitation both is (1) in the public interest and  
2 (2) in one of the enumerated categories in Section 412(a)(2). See, e.g., *Mayflower Sec. Co., Inc.*  
3 *v. Bureau of Sec.*, 312 A.2d 497 (N.J. 1973).

4  
5 6. The “public interest” is a much litigated concept that has come to have settled meanings.  
6 See generally 6 L. Loss & J. Seligman, *Securities Regulation* 3056-3057 (3d ed. 1990) (under  
7 federal securities laws).

8  
9 7. The term “failed to supervise reasonably” in Section 412(d)(9) includes having reasonable  
10 supervisory procedures in place as well as a proper system of supervision and internal control.  
11 Cf. *Hollinger v. Titan Capital Corp.*, 914 F.2d 1564 (9th Cir. 1990), cert. denied, 499 U.S. 976  
12 (1991).

13  
14 8. The term “dishonest and unethical practices” in Section 412(d)(13) has been held not to be  
15 unconstitutionally vague. See, e.g., *Brewster v. Maryland Sec. Comm’n*, 548 A.2d 157, 160  
16 (M.D. Ct. Spec. App. 1988) (“a broad statutory standard is not vague if it has a meaningful  
17 referent in business practice, custom or usage”); *Johnson-Bowles Co. v. Division of Sec.*, 829  
18 P.2d 101, 114 (Utah Ct. App. 1992) (such legislative language bespeaks a legislative intent to  
19 delegate the interpretation of what constitutes “dishonest and unethical practices” in the  
20 securities industry to the administrator).

21  
22 9. Section 412(d)(14) can be violated by a refusal to cooperate with an administrator’s  
23 reasonable audit, inspection, or investigation, including by withholding or concealing records,  
24 refusing to furnish required records, or refusing the administrator reasonable access to any office  
25 or location within an office to conduct an audit, inspection or investigation under this Act.  
26 However, a request by a person subject to an audit, examination, inspection, or investigation for a  
27 reasonable delay to obtain assistance of counsel does not constitute a violation of Section  
28 412(d)(14).  
29

1 **PARTARTICLE 5**

2 **FRAUD AND LIABILITIES**

3  
4 **SECTION 501. GENERAL FRAUD.** It is unlawful for any person, in connection with the  
5 offer, sale, or purchase of any security, directly or indirectly:

6 (1) to employ any device, scheme, or artifice to defraud;

7 (2) to make any untrue statement of a material fact or to omit to state a material fact  
8 necessary in order to make the statement made, in the light of the circumstances under which it is  
9 made, not misleading; or

10 (3) to engage in any act, practice, or course of business that operates or would operate as a  
11 fraud or deceit upon a person.

12 **Comments**

13 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 101; RUSA Section 501.

14 1. Section 501, which was Section 101 in the 1956 Act, was originally substantially similar  
15 to the Rule 10b-5 adopted under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which in turn was  
16 modeled on Section 17(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, except that Rule 10b-5 was expanded to  
17 cover the purchase as well as the sale of any security. There has been significant later federal and  
18 state case development.

19  
20 2. There are no exemptions from Section 501.

21  
22 3. Section 501 applies to any securities transaction. This would include registered, exempt,  
23 or federal covered securities. It would also include a rescission offer under Section 510.

24  
25 4. Because Rule 10b-5 reaches market manipulation, see 8 L. Loss & J. Seligman, Securities  
26 Regulation Ch.10.D (3d ed. 1991), this Act does not include the RUSA market manipulation  
27 Section 502, which had no counterpart in the 1956 Act.

28  
29 5. The culpability required to be pled or proved under Section 501 is addressed in the  
30 relevant enforcement context. See, e.g., Section 508, criminal penalties, where “willfulness”  
31 must be proven; Section 509, civil liabilities, which includes a reasonable care defense.

32  
33 6. There is no private cause of action, express or implied, under Section 501. Section  
34 509(m) expressly provides that only Section 509 provides for a private cause of action.  
35

1 7. NASAA urges Official Comments to clarify what requirements are necessary to state a  
2 cause of action under Section 501.  
3  
4  
5

6 **SECTION 502. PROHIBITED CONDUCT IN PROVIDING INVESTMENT**

7 **ADVICE.**

8 (a) [**Fraud in providing investment advice.**] It is unlawful for a person ~~who~~ that  
9 advises others, for compensation, either directly or through publications or writings, as to the  
10 value of securities or the advisability of investing in, purchasing or selling securities, or ~~who~~ that,  
11 for compensation and part of a regular business, issues or promulgates analyses or reports  
12 concerning securities:

13 (1) to employ any device, scheme, or artifice to defraud ~~the other~~ *another* person;

14 or

15 (2) to engage in any act, practice, or course of business that ~~which~~ operates or  
16 would operate as a fraud or deceit upon ~~the other~~ *another* person.

17 [(b) [**Rulemaking.**] The administrator may, by rule, define an act, practice, or course of  
18 business of an investment adviser or an investment adviser representative other than a supervised  
19 person of a federal covered investment adviser as fraudulent, deceptive or manipulative, and  
20 prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent investment advisers and investment adviser  
21 representative representatives other than supervised persons of a federal covered investment  
22 adviser from engaging in such defined fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative acts, practices, and  
23 courses of business.]

24 (c) [**Investment adviser contracts.**] It is unlawful for an investment adviser directly or  
25 indirectly to enter into, perform, extend, or renew ~~any~~ an investment advisory contract if the  
26 contract:

27 (1) provides for compensation to the investment adviser on the basis of a share of

1 capital gains upon or capital appreciation of the funds or any portion of the funds of the client;

2 (2) fails to provide, in substance, that no assignment of such contract will be  
3 made by the investment adviser without the consent of the other party to the contract; or

4 (3) fails to provide, in substance, that the investment adviser, if a [general]  
5 partnership, will notify the other party to the contract of any change in the membership of the  
6 partnership within a reasonable time after the change.

7 (d) [**Conflict of Interest Disclosure Requirement.**] It is unlawful for an investment  
8 adviser, acting as principal for the investment adviser's own account, knowingly to sell a security  
9 to or purchase a security from a client, or acting as broker-dealer for a person other than the  
10 client, knowingly to effect ~~any~~ a sale or purchase of a security for the account of the client,  
11 without disclosing to the client ~~in writing~~ *a record* before completion of the transaction the  
12 capacity in which the investment adviser is acting and obtaining the consent of the client to the  
13 transaction. ~~The prohibitions of This paragraph do~~ does not apply to a transaction with a  
14 customer of a broker-dealer if the broker-dealer is not acting as an investment adviser in relation  
15 to the transaction.

## 16 **Comments**

17 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 102(a); RUSA Section 503; Inv. Adv. Act Section 206.

18  
19 1. Subsection 502(c) or (d) permit an investment adviser to engage in conduct in which a  
20 federal covered adviser may lawfully engage under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 or the  
21 rules adopted under that Act.

22  
23 2. Under Section 203A(b)(2) of the Investment Advisers Act states retain their authority to  
24 investigate and bring enforcement actions against a federal covered investment adviser or a  
25 person associated with a federal covered investment adviser. Under Section 502, which applies  
26 to any person, a state could bring an enforcement action against a federal covered investment  
27 adviser, including a federal covered investment adviser excluded from the definition of  
28 investment adviser in Section 102(15)(E).

29  
30 3. There is no private cause of action, express or implied, under Section 502. Cf. Section  
31 509(m).  
32

1 4. As of July 2001 51 state jurisdictions by statute have adopted the substance of Section  
 2 502(a); none have adopted the substance of Section 502(b); 34 have adopted the substance of  
 3 Section 502(c); and 24 have adopted the substance of Section 502(d).

4  
 5  
 6 **Section 502 Prohibited Conduct in Providing Investment Advice**  
 7

8		<b>Jurisdiction and Citation</b>	<b>Section (a)</b>	<b>Section (b)</b>	<b>Section (c)</b>	<b>Section (d)</b>
9	1	Alabama Sec. 8-6-17	X		X	X
10	2	Alaska Sec. 45.55.020	X		X	
11	3	Arizona Sec. 44-3241	X			
12	4	Arkansas Sec. 23-42-307	X		X	
13	5	California 25235	X			X
14	6	Colorado Sec. 11-51-501	X			X
15	7	Connecticut Sec. 36b-5	X		X	
16	8	Delaware Sec. 7317	X		X	
17	9	District of Columbia Sec. 2665.2.[502]	X		X	X
18	10	Florida Sec. 517.301.	X			
19	11	Georgia Sec. 10-5-12.	X		X	
20	12	Guam Sec. 46102	X		X	
21	13	Hawaii Sec. 485-25	X		X	X
22	14	Idaho Sec. 30-1404	X		X	
23	15	Illinois Sec. 12[5/121	X			
24	16	Indiana Sec. 23-2-1-12.1	X		X	X
25	17	Iowa Sec. 502.408	X		X	
26	18	Kansas 17-1253	X		X	X
27	19	Kentucky Sec. 292.320	X		X	
28	20	Louisiana Sec. 51:712	X			
29	21	Maine Sec. 10203	X			
30	22	Maryland Sec. 11-302	X		X	X
31	23	Massachusetts Sec. 102	X			
32	24	Michigan Sec. 451.502	X		X	X
33	25	Minnesota Sec. 80A.02	X			X
34	26	Mississippi Sec. 75-71-503	X		X	X
35	27	Missouri Sec. 409.102	X		X	X
36	28	Montana Sec. 30-10-301	X		X	X
37	29	Nebraska Sec. 8-1102	X		X	X
38	30	Nevada Sec. 90.590	X			
39	31	New Hampshire Sec. 421- B:4	X			
40	32	New Jersey Sec. 49:3-53	X		X	
41	33	New Mexico Sec. 58-13B-	X		X	

	<b>Jurisdiction and Citation</b>	<b>Section (a)</b>	<b>Section (b)</b>	<b>Section (c)</b>	<b>Section (d)</b>
	33				
42	34 New York				
43	35 North Carolina Sec.78A-8	X		X	X
44	36 North Dakota Sec. 10-04-10.1	X		X	X
45	37 Ohio Sec. 1707.44	X			X
46	38 Oklahoma Sec. 102	X		X	
47	39 Oregon Sec. 59.135	X			
48	40 Pennsylvania Sec. 404	X		X	X
49	41 Puerto Rico Sec. 852. [102]	X		X	
50	42 Rhode Island Sec. 7-11-503	X			X
51	43 South Carolina Sec. 35-1-1220	X		X	X
52	44 South Dakota Sec. 47-3 IA-102	X		X	X
53	45 Tennessee Sec. 48-2-121	X			
54	46 Texas				
55	47 Utah Sec. 61-1-2	X		X	
56	48 Vermont Sec. 4224	X		X	X
57	49 Virginia Sec. 13.1-503	X		X	X
58	50 Washington Sec. 21.20.020	X		X	X
59	51 West Virginia Sec.32-4-102	X		X	
60	52 Wisconsin Sec. 551.44	X			
61	53 Wyoming Sec. 17-4-102	X			
62	TOTALS:	51	-0-	34	24

63 Some states have adopted §502(b) by rule. E.g., 64 Pa. Code §§404.010-404.013.

64  
65 5. The SIA opposes Sections 502(b)-(d) in this draft and would instead include new Sections  
66 502(b)-(c):

67  
68 (b) Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to a broker-dealer or it's  
69 agents whose actions are solely incidental to the conduct of the business of the  
70 broker-dealer and who receive no special compensation for their services.

71  
72 (c) The administrator may not by rule interpret this section nor adopt any rule,  
73 nor by rule define any act, practice or course of business of a federal covered  
74 investment adviser to be a violation of subparagraph (a) if such act, practice or  
75 course of business would not continue a fraudulent act under the Investment  
76 Advisers Act of 1940 or the rules promulgated thereunder.

1  
2 6. Pennsylvania instead proposes new language: “The prohibitions of this Section shall  
3 apply to federal covered advisers only to the extent that the prohibited conduct involves fraud or  
4 deceit.”  
5  
6  
7

8 **SECTION 503. EVIDENTIARY BURDEN.**

9 (a) [Civil.] In a civil action or administrative proceeding under this [Act], a person  
10 claiming an exemption, exception, preemption, or exclusion has the burden of ~~proving~~  
11 *persuasion to prove* the applicability of the exemption, exception, preemption, or exclusion.

12 (b) [Criminal.] In a criminal proceeding under this [Act], a person claiming an  
13 exemption, exception, preemption, or exclusion has the burden of going forward with evidence  
14 of the claim.

15 **Comments**

16 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 402(d); RUSA Section 608.

17 1. The Official Comment 2 to RUSA Section 608 explained:  
18

19 Section (b) has been added to clarify the parties’ respective obligations in a  
20 criminal proceeding. While the standard of proof that the prosecuting attorney is  
21 required to meet to obtain a conviction is establishing the requisite elements of the  
22 criminal offense “beyond a reasonable doubt,” a defendant claiming an exemption  
23 or exception as a defense has the burden of offering evidence to establish that  
24 defense.  
25

26 2. The burden of proving an exemption or exception is upon the party claiming it. See, e.g.,  
27 *United States ex. rel. Schott v. Tehan*, 365 F.2d 191, 195 (6th Cir. 1966) (Ohio blue sky law  
28 constitutionally shifts burden of proof to defendant); *Commonwealth v. David*, 309 N.E.2d 484,  
29 488 (Mass. 1974) (exemption is an affirmative defense); *State v. Frost*, 387 N.E.2d 235, 238-239  
30 (Ohio 1979) (it is not unconstitutional to require the burden of proof as an affirmative defense to  
31 prove a securities law exemption).  
32  
33  
34

35 **SECTION 504. FILING OF SALES AND ADVERTISING LITERATURE.**

36 (a) [Filing requirement.] Except as otherwise provided in subsection (b), the  
37 administrator, by rule or order, may require the filing of any prospectus, pamphlet, circular, form

1 letter, advertisement, sales literature, or advertising communication addressed or intended for  
2 distribution to prospective investors, including clients or prospective clients of an investment  
3 adviser registered or required to be registered in this State, in connection with a security or  
4 investment advice.

5 (b) [**Scope limitations.**] This section does not apply to ~~any such~~ communication relating  
6 to a federal covered security, a federal covered adviser, or ~~any~~ security or transaction exempted  
7 by Sections 201, ~~and 202,~~ or 203.

### 8 **Comments**

9 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 403; RUSA Section 405.

10 1. The prospectuses, pamphlets, circulars, form letters, advertisements, sales literature or  
11 advertising communications, or other records includes material disseminated electronically or  
12 available on a web site.

13  
14 2. The administrator may bring civil enforcement in a court under Section 603 or institute  
15 administrative enforcement under Section 604 to prevent publication, circulation or use of any  
16 materials required by the administrator to be filed under Section 504 that hve not been filed.

17  
18  
19  
20 **SECTION 505. MISLEADING FILINGS.** It is unlawful for a person to make or cause to  
21 be made, in a record that is used in a proceeding or filed under this [Act], a statement that, at the  
22 time and in the light of the circumstances under which it is made, is false or misleading in a  
23 material respect, or, in connection with such statement, to omit to state a material fact necessary  
24 in order to make the statement made, in the light of the circumstances under which it was made,  
25 not misleading.

### 26 **Comments**

27 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 404; RUSA Section 504.

28  
29 The definition of “materiality” in *TSC Indus., Inc. v. Northway, Inc.*, 426 U.S. 438, 449 (U.S.  
30 1976) (“an omitted fact is material if there is a substantial likelihood that a reasonable shareholder  
31 would consider it important in deciding how to vote”) has generally been followed in both federal  
32 and state securities law. See 4 L. Loss & J. Seligman, *Securities Regulation* 2071-2105 (3d ed. rev.

1 2000).

2  
3  
4  
5 **SECTION 506. MISREPRESENTATIONS CONCERNING REGISTRATION OR**  
6 **EXEMPTION.** ~~(a)~~ The filing of an application for registration, a registration statement, or a notice  
7 filing under this [Act], or the registration of a person, the notice filing by a person, or the registration  
8 of a security under this [Act] does not constitute a finding by the administrator that a record filed  
9 under this [Act] is true, complete, and not misleading. The filing or registration or the availability  
10 of an exemption, exception, preemption, or exclusion for a security or a transaction does not mean  
11 that the administrator has passed upon the merits or qualifications of, or recommended or given  
12 approval to, a person, security, or transaction. ~~(b)~~ It is unlawful to make, or cause to be made, to a  
13 purchaser, customer, client, or prospective customer or client, a representation inconsistent with  
14 ~~subsection (a) this section.~~

### 15 **Comments**

16 **Source of Law:** RUSA Section 505; 1956 Act Section 405.

17  
18 This Section follows the 1956 Act and RUSA, as well as state securities statutes generally, in  
19 providing that a misrepresentation concerning registration or an exemption is unlawful.  
20  
21  
22

### 23 **SECTION 507. QUALIFIED IMMUNITY.**

24 ~~(a) [Truthful statements required.] A broker-dealer, agent, investment adviser, or~~  
25 ~~investment adviser representative shall make truthful and accurate statements in any record required~~  
26 ~~by the administrator, the Securities and Exchange Commission, or a self-regulatory organization.~~

27 ~~(b) [Qualified immunity.] A broker-dealer, agent, investment adviser, federal covered~~  
28 ~~investment adviser, or investment adviser representative is not liable to another broker-dealer, agent,~~  
29 ~~investment adviser, federal covered investment adviser, or investment adviser representative for~~  
30 ~~defamation relating to an alleged untrue statement that is contained in a record required by the~~

1 administrator or its designee, ~~the Securities and Exchange Commission, or a self-regulatory~~  
2 ~~organization~~ unless it is shown by [clear and convincing evidence] that the person knew, or should  
3 have known at the time that the statement was made, that it was false in ~~any~~ material respect or the  
4 person acted in reckless disregard of the statement's truth or falsity.

## 5 **Comments**

6 **Source of Law:** National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc. Proposal Relating to  
7 Qualified Immunity in Arbitration Proceedings for Statements Made in Forms U-4 and U-5.  
8

9 1. The National Association of Securities Dealers proposal was reprinted in Securities  
10 Exchange Release 39,892, 66 SEC Dock. 2473 (1998). This proposal was limited to arbitration  
11 proceedings. It has not been approved by the Securities and Exchange Commission.  
12

13 2. An alternative approach would be a standard providing for absolute immunity. See  
14 generally Wright, Form U-5 Defamation, 52 Wash. & Lee L. Rev. 1299 (1995); Acciardo v.  
15 Millennium Sec. Corp., 83 F. Supp. 2d 413 (S.D.N.Y. 2000) (discussing both New York  
16 qualified and absolute immunity cases).  
17

18 3. Securities administrators or self-regulatory organizations generally are subject to absolute  
19 or qualified immunity for actions of their employees within the course of their official duties.  
20 See 10 L. Loss & J. Seligman, Securities Regulation 4818-4821 (3d ed. rev. 1996).  
21

22 4. As is generally the law "truth is a complete defense to a defamation action." Andrews v.  
23 Prudential Sec., Inc., 160 F.3d 304, 308 (6th Cir. 1998).  
24

25 5. Through June 2001 no state had adopted in its securities statute. No state has rejected  
26 immunity in this context by judicial decision. A number of states have adopted qualified  
27 immunity by judicial decision. See, e.g., Eaton Vance Distrib., Inc. v. Ulrich, 692 So.2d 915  
28 (Fla. Dist. Ct. App. 1997); Bavarati v. Josephal, Lyon & Ross, Inc., 28 F.3d 704 (7th Cir. 1994)  
29 (Illinois); Andrews v. Prudential Sec., Inc., 160 F.3d 304 (6th Cir. 1998) (Michigan); Prudential  
30 Sec., Inc. v. Dalton, 929 F. Supp. 1411 (N.D. Okla. 1996) (Oklahoma); Glennon v. Dean Witter  
31 Reynolds Inc., 83 F.3d 132 (6th Cir. 1996) (Tennessee).  
32

33 6. An agent who has been the subject of a Form U-5, Uniform Termination Notice for  
34 Securities Industry Registration, may respond to specified adverse disclosures and have their  
35 responses reprinted on the published version of Form U-5. [confirm]  
36  
37  
38

## 39 **SECTION 508. CRIMINAL PENALTIES.**

40 (a) [**Criminal penalties.**] A person that willfully violates this [Act], or a rule adopted or  
41 order issued under this [Act], except Section 504 or the notice filing requirements of Section 302

1 or 405, or who willfully violates Section 505 knowing the statement made to be false or  
2 misleading in a material respect, upon conviction, shall be fined not more than [\$\_\_\_\_] or  
3 imprisoned not more than [\_\_\_\_] years, or both. ~~but~~ A person *convicted of violating a rule or*  
4 *order under this [Act] may be ~~sued~~ fined, but may not be imprisoned for the violation of a rule*  
5 ~~adopted or order issued~~ if the person proves ~~that the person did not have~~ *lack of knowledge of the*  
6 rule or order.

7 (b) [Statute of limitations.] An indictment or information may not be returned under  
8 this [Act] more than [\_\_\_\_ years] after the commission of the offense.

9 (b)(c) [Criminal reference not required.] The [Attorney General or the proper  
10 prosecuting attorney] with or without a reference from the administrator, may commence  
11 appropriate criminal proceedings under this [Act].

12 (e) (d) [No limitation on other criminal enforcement.] This [Act] does not limit the  
13 power of this State to punish a person for conduct that otherwise constitutes a crime under ~~the~~  
14 *other laws of this State's law.*

## 15 Comments

16 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 409.

17 1. This Section follows the 1956 Act and the federal securities laws in awarding criminal  
18 penalties for any willful violation of the Act. RUSA Section 604 distinguished between felonies  
19 and misdemeanors, limiting willful violations of cease and desist orders to a misdemeanor.  
20

21 2. The term “willfully” has the same meaning in Section 508 as it did in the 1956 Act. All  
22 that is required is proof that a person acted intentionally in the sense that the person was aware of  
23 what he or she was doing. Proof of evil motive or intent to violate the law or knowledge that the  
24 law was being violated is not required. The principal function of the word “willfully” is thus to  
25 serve as a legislative hint of self-restraint to the administrator. This definition has been followed  
26 by most subsequent courts. See, e.g., *State v. Hodge*, 460 P.2d 596, 604 (Kan. 1969) (“No  
27 specific intent is necessary to constitute the offense where one violates the securities act except  
28 the intent to do the act denounced by the statute”); *State v. Nagel*, 279 N.W.2d 911, 915 (S.D.  
29 1979) (“[I]t is widely understood that the legislature may forbid the doing of an act and make its  
30 commission a crime without regard to the intent or knowledge of the doer”); *State v. Fries*, 337  
31 N.W.2d 398, 405 (Neb. 1983) (proof of a specific intent, evil motive, or knowledge that the law  
32 was being violated is not required to sustain a criminal conviction under a state’s blue sky law);

1 People v. Riley, 708 P.2d 1359, 1362 (Colo. 1985) (“A person acts ‘knowingly’ or ‘willfully’  
2 with respect to conduct . . . when he is aware that his conduct . . . exists”); State v. Larsen, 865  
3 P.2d 1355, 1358 (Utah 1993) (willful implies a willingness to commit the act, not an intent to  
4 violate the law or to injure another or acquire any advantage); State v. Montgomery, 17 P.3d  
5 292, 294 (Idaho 2001) (Docket No. 24670) (bad faith is not required for a violation of a state  
6 securities act; willful implies “simply a purpose or willingness to commit the act or make the  
7 omission referred to”); State v. Dumke, 901 S.W.2d 100, 102 (Mo. Ct. App. 1995) (*mens rea* not  
8 required); State v. Mueller, 549 N.W.2d 455, 460 (Wis. Ct. App. 1996) (willfulness does not  
9 require proof that the defendant acted with intent to defraud or knowledge that the law was  
10 violated).

11  
12 3. The appropriate state prosecutor under Section 508(c) may decide whether to bring a  
13 criminal action under this statute, another statute, or, when applicable, common law.

14  
15 4. This Section does not specify maximum dollar amounts for criminal fines, maximum  
16 terms for imprisonment, nor the years of limitation, but does provide for each state including  
17 appropriate numbers for these matters.

18  
19 5. In certain states the administrator has full or limited criminal enforcement powers.  
20

## 21 22 23 ~~SECTION 509. CIVIL LIABILITY.~~

24  
25 ~~(a) The application of this section is limited by the Securities Litigation Uniform~~  
26 ~~Standards Act of 1998.~~

27 ~~(b) A person who:~~

28 ~~(1) sells a security in violation of Section 301; or~~

29 ~~(2) sells a security by means of any untrue statement of a material fact or an~~  
30 ~~omission to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statement made, in the light of the~~  
31 ~~circumstances under which they are made, not misleading, the purchaser not knowing of the~~  
32 ~~untruth or omission, and the seller does not sustain the burden of proof that the seller did not~~  
33 ~~know and in the exercise of reasonable care could not have known of the untruth or omission is~~  
34 ~~liable to the purchaser. The purchaser may maintain an action at law or in equity to recover the~~  
35 ~~consideration paid for the security, [together with interest at x percent per year from the date of~~  
36 ~~payment,] costs, and reasonable attorneys’ fees determined by the court, less the amount of any~~

1 ~~income received on the security, upon the tender of the security, or for damages provided in~~  
2 ~~paragraph (j)(1):~~

3 ~~(c) A person who sells a security in violation of Section 401(a), 402(a), or 506(b) is~~  
4 ~~liable to the purchaser. The purchaser may sue at law or in equity to recover the commissions~~  
5 ~~paid to purchase the security [together with interest at X percent per year from the date of~~  
6 ~~payment,] costs, or reasonable attorneys' fees determined by the court.~~

7 ~~(d) A person who buys a security by means of an untrue statement of a material fact or an~~  
8 ~~omission to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statement made, in light of the~~  
9 ~~circumstances under which it is made, not misleading, the seller not knowing of the untruth or~~  
10 ~~omission, and the purchaser does not sustain the burden of proof that the purchaser did not know~~  
11 ~~and in the exercise of reasonable care could not have known of the untruth or omission is liable~~  
12 ~~to the seller. The seller may maintain an action at law or in equity to recover the security, costs,~~  
13 ~~or reasonable attorneys' fees determined by the court, plus the amount of any income received on~~  
14 ~~the security or for damages provided in paragraph (j)(2):~~

15 ~~(e) An investment adviser or investment adviser representative who violates Section~~  
16 ~~403(a), 404(a), or 506(b), whether through the issuance of analyses, reports, or otherwise, is~~  
17 ~~liable to a person who provides directly or indirectly any consideration for advice as to the value~~  
18 ~~of securities or their purchase or sale. That person may maintain an action at law or in equity to~~  
19 ~~recover the consideration paid for the advice [together with interest at [x] percent from the date~~  
20 ~~of payment], plus costs and reasonable attorneys' fees determined by the court.~~

21 ~~(f) A person who receives directly or indirectly any consideration from another person~~  
22 ~~for advice as to the value of securities or their purchase or sale, whether through the issuance of~~  
23 ~~analyses, reports, or otherwise and employs a device, scheme, or artifice to defraud other person~~  
24 ~~or engages in any act, practice, or course of business that operates or would operate as a fraud or~~

1 ~~deceit on the other person, is liable to the other person. The other person may maintain an action~~  
2 ~~at law or in equity to recover the consideration paid for the advice and any loss due to the advice,~~  
3 ~~[together with interest at [x] percent from the date of payment of the consideration,] costs, and~~  
4 ~~reasonable attorney's fees determined by the court, less the amount of any income received from~~  
5 ~~the advice.~~

6 ~~(g) The following persons are liable jointly and severally with and to the same extent as a~~  
7 ~~violation under subsections (b) through (f):~~

8 ~~(1) a person who directly or indirectly controls a person liable under subsections~~  
9 ~~(b) through (f);~~

10 ~~(2) a person who is a managing partner, executive officer, or director of a person~~  
11 ~~liable under subsections (b) through (d) including each person occupying a similar status or~~  
12 ~~performing similar functions;~~

13 ~~(3) a person who is an employee of a person liable under subsections (b) through~~  
14 ~~(f) who materially aids and abets conduct giving rise to the liability, and~~

15 ~~(4) a person who is a broker-dealer or agent or an investment adviser or~~  
16 ~~investment adviser representative who materially aids and abets the conduct giving rise to the~~  
17 ~~liability in subsections (b) through (f).~~

18 ~~There is contribution as in cases of contract among the several persons liable under this~~  
19 ~~Section.~~

20 ~~(h) A person specified in subsections (g)(1) and (2) will not be liable if the person~~  
21 ~~sustains the burden of proof that the person did not know, and in exercise of reasonable care~~  
22 ~~could not have known, of the existence of the facts by reason of which the liability is alleged to~~  
23 ~~exist.~~

24 ~~(i) The tender specified in this subsection (b) may be made at any time before entry of~~

1 judgment. ~~Tender requires only notice in a record of willingness to exchange the security for the~~  
2 ~~amount specified. A purchaser who no longer owns the security may recover damages.~~

3 (j) ~~Damages in an action arising:~~

4 (1) ~~under subsection (b) are the amount that would be recoverable upon a tender~~  
5 ~~less the value of the security when the purchaser disposed of it, together with interest [at x~~  
6 ~~percent per year from the date of disposition of the security,] costs, and reasonable attorneys' fees~~  
7 ~~determined by the court;~~

8 (2) ~~under subsection (d) are the difference between the price at which the~~  
9 ~~securities were purchased and the market value the securities would have had at the time of the~~  
10 ~~purchase in the absence of the defendant's action, omission, or transaction causing liability,~~  
11 ~~together with interest [at x percent per year from the date of purchase of the security], costs, and~~  
12 ~~reasonable attorneys' fees determined by the court.~~

13 (k) ~~A cause of action under this section survives the death of an individual who might~~  
14 ~~have been a plaintiff or defendant.~~

15 (l) ~~A person may not obtain relief:~~

16 (1) ~~under paragraph (b)(1) or subsection (e) unless an action is commenced within~~  
17 ~~one year after the act, omission, or transaction constituting the violation;~~

18 (2) ~~under paragraph (b)(2) or subsection (d) or (f) unless an action is commenced~~  
19 ~~within one year after discovery, and one [three] year[s] after discovery should have been made by~~  
20 ~~the exercise of reasonable care, or three [five] years after the act, omission, or transaction~~  
21 ~~constituting the violation.~~

22 (m) ~~A purchaser may not commence an action under this section if:~~

23 (1) ~~the purchaser received in a record, before an action is commenced, an offer to~~  
24 ~~purchase:~~

1                   (A) ~~stating the respect in which liability under this section may have arisen~~  
2 ~~and fairly advising the purchaser of the purchaser's rights in connection with the offer to~~  
3 ~~repurchase;~~

4                   (B) ~~if the basis for relief under this subsection may have been a violation~~  
5 ~~of subsection (e) or (f), including financial and other information necessary to correct all material~~  
6 ~~misstatements or omissions in the information that was required by this [Act] to be furnished to~~  
7 ~~the purchaser as of the time of the sale of the security to the purchaser;~~

8                   (C) ~~offering to repurchase the security for cash, payable on delivery of the~~  
9 ~~security, equal to the consideration paid, [together with interest at x percent per year] from the~~  
10 ~~date of payment, less income received thereon, or, if the purchaser no longer owns the security,~~  
11 ~~offering to pay the purchaser upon acceptance of the offer an amount in cash equal to the~~  
12 ~~damages computed in the manner provided in subparagraph (j)(1); and~~

13                   (D) ~~stating that the offer may be accepted by the purchaser within 30 days after~~  
14 ~~the date of its receipt by the purchaser or any shorter period, not less than three days that the~~  
15 ~~administrator by order prescribes;~~

16                   (2) ~~the offer under paragraph (1) [is filed with administrator before the offering and]~~  
17 ~~conforms in form and content with any rule prescribed by the administrator;~~

18                   (3) ~~the offeror has the present ability to pay the amount offered under paragraph~~  
19 ~~(1);~~

20                   (4) ~~the offer under paragraph (i) is received by the purchaser; and~~

21                   (5) ~~the purchaser accepts the offer in a record within the period specified under~~  
22 ~~paragraph (1)(D) and is paid in accordance with the terms of the offer.~~

23                   (n) ~~A person who has made or engaged in the performance of a contract in violation of~~  
24 ~~this [Act] or a rule adopted or order issued under this [Act], or who has acquired a purported~~

1 ~~right under the contract with knowledge of the facts by reason of which is making or~~  
2 ~~performance was in violation, may not base an action on the contract.~~

3 ~~(o) A condition, stipulation, or provision binding a person purchasing or selling a security~~  
4 ~~or receiving investment advice or waiving compliance with this [Act] or a rule adopted or order~~  
5 ~~issued under this [Act] is void.~~

6 ~~(p) The rights and remedies provided by this [Act] are in addition to any other rights or~~  
7 ~~remedies that may exist at law or in equity, but this [Act] does not create a cause of action not~~  
8 ~~specified in this section or Section 406(n).~~

9  
10 ***SECTION 509. CIVIL LIABILITY.***

11 (a) **[Securities litigation uniform standards act.]** Enforcement of civil liability under  
12 this section is subject to the Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act of 1998.

13 (b) **[Liability of seller to purchaser.]** A person who sells a security in violation of  
14 Section 301, or by means of an untrue statement of a material fact or an omission to state a  
15 material fact necessary in order to make the statement made, in light of the circumstances under  
16 which it is made, not misleading, the purchaser not knowing the untruth or omission, and the  
17 seller not sustaining the burden of proof that the seller did not know and, in the exercise of  
18 reasonable care, could not have known of the untruth or omission, is liable to the purchaser. An  
19 action under this subsection is governed by the following rules:

20 (1) The purchaser may commence an action at law or in equity to recover the  
21 consideration paid for the security, less the amount of any income received on the security,  
22 together with interest at [\_\_] percent per year from the date of the purchase, costs, and reasonable  
23 attorneys' fees determined by the court, upon the tender of the security, or for damages as  
24 provided in paragraph (3).

1 (2) The tender referred to in paragraph (1) may be made any time before entry of  
2 judgment. Tender requires only notice in a record of [ownership of the security and] willingness  
3 to exchange the security for the amount specified. A purchaser that no longer owns the security  
4 may recover damages.

5 (3) Actual damages in an action arising under this subsection are the amount that  
6 would be recoverable upon a tender less the value of the security when the purchaser disposed of  
7 it, together with interest at [\_\_\_] percent per year from the date of purchase, costs, and reasonable  
8 attorneys' fees determined by the court.

9 (c) [**Liability of purchaser to seller.** ] A person who buys a security by means of an  
10 untrue statement of a material fact or omission to state a material fact necessary in order to make  
11 the statement made, in light of the circumstances under which it is made, not misleading, the  
12 seller not knowing of the untruth or omission, and the purchaser not sustaining the burden of  
13 proof that the purchaser did not know, and in the exercise of reasonable care, could not have  
14 known of the untruth or omission, is liable to the seller. An action under this subsection is  
15 governed by the following rules:

16 (1) The seller may commence an action at law or in equity to recover the security,  
17 together with any income received on the security, costs, and reasonable attorneys' fees  
18 determined by the court, upon the tender of the purchase price, or for damages as provided in  
19 paragraph (3).

20 (2) The tender referred to in paragraph (1) may be made any time before entry of  
21 judgment. Tender requires only notice in a record of the present ability to pay the amount  
22 tendered and willingness to take delivery of the security for the amount specified. If the  
23 purchaser no longer owns the security, the seller may recover damages.

24 (3) Actual damages in an action arising under this subsection are the difference

1 between the price at which the security was sold and the value the security would have had at the  
2 time of the sale in the absence of the seller's conduct causing liability, together with interest at  
3 [\_\_] percent per year from the date of sale of the security, costs, and reasonable attorneys' fees  
4 determined by, the court.

5 (d) [**Liability of unregistered broker-dealer and agent.**] A broker-dealer or agent who  
6 sells or buys a security in violation of Section 401(a), 402(a), or 506 is liable to the customer.  
7 The customer, if a purchaser, may commence an action at law or in equity to recover a remedy as  
8 delineated in subsection (b)(1)-(3); or, if a seller, a remedy as delineated in subsection (c)(1)-(3).

9 (e) [**Liability of unregistered investment adviser and investment adviser representative.**]  
10 An investment adviser or investment adviser representative who provides investment advice for a  
11 fee in violation of Section 403(a), 404(a), or 506 is liable to the client. The client may  
12 commence an action at law or in equity to recover the consideration paid for the advice, together  
13 with interest at [\_\_] percent from the date of payment, costs, and reasonable attorneys' fees  
14 determined by the court.

15 (f) [**Liability for investment advice.**] (1) A person who receives directly or indirectly  
16 any consideration for providing advice to another person as to the value of securities or their  
17 purchase or sale, whether through the issuance of analyses, reports, or otherwise and employs a  
18 device, scheme, or artifice to defraud the other person or engages in an act, practice, or course of  
19 business that operates or would operate as a fraud or deceit on the other person, is liable to the  
20 other person.

21 (2) The other person may commence an action at law or in equity to recover the  
22 consideration paid for the advice and the amount of any actual damages caused by the  
23 misconduct in paragraph (1), together with interest at [\_\_] percent from the date of the  
24 transaction causing the loss, costs, and reasonable attorney's fees determined by the court, less

1 the amount of any income received as a result of the transaction causing the loss.

2 (g) [**Joint and several liability.**] The following persons are liable jointly and severally  
3 with and to the same extent as persons liable under subsections (b) through (f):

4 (1) a person who directly or indirectly controls a person liable under subsections  
5 (b) through (f), unless the person sustains the burden of proof that the controlling person acted in  
6 good faith and did not, directly or indirectly, unduce the act, omission or transaction constituting  
7 the violation;

8 (2) an individual who is a managing partner, executive officer, or director of a  
9 person liable under subsections (b) through (f), including each individual occupying a similar  
10 status or performing similar functions, unless the individual sustains the burden of proof that the  
11 individual did not know and, in the exercise of reasonable care, could not have known, of the  
12 existence of the facts by reason of which the liability is alleged to exist;

13 (3) an individual who is an employee of a person liable under subsections (b)  
14 through (f) who intentionally or recklessly materially aids and abets the conduct giving rise to the  
15 liability; and

16 (4) a person who is a broker-dealer, agent, investment adviser, or investment  
17 adviser representative who intentionally or recklessly materially aids and abets the conduct  
18 giving rise to the liability under subsections (b) through (f).

19 (h) [**Right of contribution.**] A person liable under this section has a right of  
20 contribution as in cases of contract against any other person liable under this section for the same  
21 conduct.

22 (i) [**Survival of cause of action.**] A cause of action under this section survives the death  
23 of a person who might have been a plaintiff or defendant.

24 (j) [Statute of limitations.] A person may not obtain relief:

1 (1) under subsection (b) for violation of Section 301, or under subsection (d) or  
2 (e), unless the action is commenced within one year after the violation occurred; or

3  
4 (2) under subsection (b) other than for violation of Section 301, or under  
5 subsection (c) or (f), unless the action is commenced within the earlier of one year after the actual  
6 discovery of the facts constituting the violation, and four years after such violation.

7 (k) [**No enforcement of violative contract.**] A person that has made or engaged in the  
8 performance of a contract in violation of this [Act] or a rule adopted or order issued under this  
9 [Act], or who has acquired a purported right under the contract with knowledge of the facts by  
10 reason of which its making or performance was in violation, may not base an action on the  
11 contract.

12 (l) [**No contractual waiver.**] A condition, stipulation, or provision binding a person  
13 purchasing or selling a security or receiving investment advise to waive compliance with this  
14 [Act] or a rule adopted or order issued under this [Act] is void.

15 (m) [**Survival of other rights or remedies.**] The rights and remedies provided by this  
16 [Act] are in addition to any other rights or remedies that may exist at law or in equity, but this  
17 [Act] does not create a cause of action not specified in this section or Section 411(e).

## 18 **Comments**

19 Source of Law: 1956 Act Section 410; RUSA Sections 605-607, 609, 802.

20  
21 1. Under Section 509 violations of two or more sections can be proven, but the remedy is  
22 limited either to rescission or actual damages. Actual damages means compensatory damages.  
23 Punitive or “double” damages are prohibited by this section which also is the standard under  
24 Section 28(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. See 9 L. Loss & J. Seligman, Securities  
25 Regulation 4408-4427 (3d ed. rev. 1992).

26  
27 2. Section 509(a) referencing the Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act of 1998  
28 modifies the entire Section 509.

29  
30 3. Section 509(b), as with Section 12(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933, contains a type of

1 privity requirement in that the purchaser is required to bring an action against the seller. Section  
2 509(b) is broader than Section 12(a)(2) in that it will reach all sales in violation of Section 301,  
3 not just sales “by means of a prospectus” as is the law under Section 12(a)(2). See Gustafson v.  
4 Alloyd Co., Inc., 513 U.S. 561 (1995). Cf. Hoover v. E. F. Hutton & Co., Inc., 1980 Fed. Sec.  
5 L. Rep. (CCH) ¶97,654 (E.D. Pa. 1980).

6  
7 In Zack Co. v. Sims, 438 N.E. 2d 663 (Ill. App. Ct. 1982), the court held that a party who  
8 provides financing for the purchase of stock without becoming involved in the actual contract  
9 negotiations is not a “purchaser” and not entitled to invoke the statutory remedies. However a  
10 financing party may assume a variety of legal roles such as donor, lender, or beneficiary of a  
11 resulting trust, with regard to the benefitted party, that have no relationship whatsoever to the  
12 agreement between the contracting parties. A purchaser’s wife providing financing to the  
13 purchaser without participating in the purchase transaction would not be entitled to relief as a  
14 “purchaser” and is not entitled to relief, but she could be recognized as the beneficiary of a  
15 resulting trust with a one half interest in designated stock. See also Space v. E. F. Hutton Co.,  
16 Inc., 544 N.E.2d 67 (Ill. App. 1989), appeal denied, 548 N.E.2d 1078 (Ill. 1989) (the remedies  
17 under the Illinois blue sky law §13(A) are available only to purchasers of securities).

18  
19 4. In providing for damages as an alternative to rescission, Section 509(b)(3) follows the  
20 1956 Act and is an improvement upon many earlier state provisions, which conditioned the  
21 plaintiff’s right of recovery on his or her being in a position to make a good tender. A plaintiff is  
22 not given the right under this type of statutory formula to retain stock and also seek damages.  
23 See Windswept Corp. v. Fisher, 683 F. Supp. 233, 239 (W.D. Wash. 1988) (Washington).

24  
25 5. The measure of damages in Section 509(b)(3) is that contemplated by Section 12 of the  
26 Securities of 1933. See 9 L. Loss and J. Seligman,

27  
28 Securities Regulations 4242-4246 (3d ed. 1992). The measure of damages in Section  
29 509(c)(3), however, is suggested by Rule 10b-5. Sec. 9 id. 4408-4427.

30  
31 6. Section 509(e)-(f) is based on a 1981 NASAA amendment to the Uniform Securities Act  
32 adopted in order “to establish civil liability for individuals who willfully violate section 102  
33 dealing with fraudulent practices pertaining to advisory activities.” Neither provision is intended  
34 to limit other state laws claims for providing investment advice.

35  
36 7. Some 42 or more jurisdictions have adopted each provision of Section 509(g).

**Section 509(g)–Joint and Several Liability**

	Jurisdiction and Citation	Section A– Directly controls person	Section B– indirectly liable Managing partner, executive officer, etc.	Section C– Employee of person liable who materially aids and abets	Section D Broker-dealer or investment adviser who materially aids and abets	
1	1	Alabama Sec. 8-6-19(c)	X	X	X	
2	2	Alaska Sec. 45.55.930(c)	X	X	X	X
3	3	Arizona Sec. 44-2003.	X	X		
4	4	Arkansas Sec. 23-42-106(c)	X	X	X	X
5	5	California (See Notes)	X	X <sup>7</sup>	X <sup>8</sup>	<sup>9</sup>
6	6	Colorado Sec. 11-51-604(5) <sup>10</sup>	X	X	X	X
7	7	Connecticut Sec. 36b-29(c)	X	X	X	X
8	8	Delaware Sec. 7323(b)	X	X	X	X
9	9	District of Columbia Sec. 2666.5[605](c)	X	X	X	X
10	10	Florida Sec. 517.211.				
11	11	Georgia Sec. 10-5-14(c)	X	X	X	X
12	12	Guam Sec. 46410(b)	X	X	X	X
13	13	Hawaii Sec. 485-20(a)		X	X <sup>11</sup>	
14	14	Idaho Sec. 30-1446(2)	X	X	X	X
15	15	Illinois Sec. 13[5/13].A	X		X	
16	16	Indiana Sec. 23-2-1-19(d)	X	X	X	X
17	17	Iowa Sec. 502.503.1	X	X	X	X
18	18	Kansas 17-1268(b)	X	X	X	X
19	19	Kentucky Sec. 292.480	X	X	X	X
20	20	Louisiana Sec. 51:714(B)	X	X	X <sup>12</sup>	X <sup>13</sup>
21	21	Maine Sec. 10605(3)	X	X	X	X
22	22	Maryland Sec. 11-703(c)	X	X	X	X
23	23	Massachusetts Sec. 410(b)	X	X	X	X
24	24	Michigan Sec. 451.810(b)	X	X	X	X
25	25	Minnesota Sec. 80A.23. Subd.3	X	X	X	X
26	26	Mississippi Sec. 75-71-719	X	X	X	X
27	27	Missouri Sec. 409.411(c)	X	X	X	X
28	28	Montana Sec. 30-10-307(2)	X	X	X	X
29	29	Nebraska Sec. 8-1118(3)	X			X
30	30	Nevada Sec. 90.660.4	X	X	X	X
31	31	New Hampshire Sec. 421-B:25(III)	X	X	X	X

<sup>7</sup> California Sec. 25504. Controlling person – Joint and several liability

<sup>8</sup> California Sec. 25504.1. Person materially assisting in violation – Joint and several liability

<sup>9</sup> *Id.* – “Any person who materially assists in any violation...”

<sup>10</sup> Colorado – “...any person”

<sup>11</sup> Hawaii – “...if the...agent has personally participated or aided in any way...”

<sup>12</sup> Louisiana – “... every person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions...”

<sup>13</sup> Louisiana – “...who participates in a material way”

1	32 New Jersey Sec. 49:3-71(d)	X	X	X	X
2	33 New Mexico Sec.				
3	58-13B-40(F)	X	X	X	X
4	34 New York Sec. 359-g				
5	35 North Carolina				
6	Sec.78A-56(c)	X	X	X	X
7	36 North Dakota Sec. 10-04-17 <sup>14</sup>				
8	37 Ohio Sec. 1707.41		X		
9	38 Oklahoma Sec. 408(b) <sup>15</sup>	X	X		
10	39 Oregon Sec. 59.995	X	X	X	X
11	40 Pennsylvania Sec. 501(c) <sup>16</sup>				
12	41 Puerto Rico Sec. 890(b)	X	X	X	X
13	42 Rhode Island				
14	Sec. 7-11-605(d)	X	X	X	X
15	43 South Carolina				
16	Sec. 35-1-1490				
17	44 South Dakota Sec. 47-31A				
18	-410(c)	X	X	X	X
19	45 Tennessee Sec. 48-2-122(g)	X	X	X	X
20	46 Texas Sec. 33[581-33](F)	X			
21	47 Utah Sec. 61-1-22(4)(a)	X	X	X	X
22	48 Vermont Sec. 4240(f)	X	X	X	X
23	49 Virginia Sec. 13.1-522(C)	X	X	X	X
24	50 Washington				
25	Sec. 21.20.430(3)	X	X	X	X
26	51 West Virginia				
27	Sec.32-4-410(b)	X	X	X	X
28	52 Wisconsin Sec. 551.59(4)	X	X	X	X
29	53 Wyoming Sec. 17-4-122(b)	X	X	X	X
30					
31	<b>TOTALS:</b>	<u>44</u>	<u>46</u>	<u>43</u>	<u>42</u>
32					
33					
34					
35					
36					
37					
38					
39					

<sup>14</sup> North Dakota – “The person making such sale or contract for sale, and every director, officer, or agent of or for such seller who shall have participated or aided in any way in making such sale shall be jointly and severally liable to such purchaser who may sue wither at law or in equity to recover...”

<sup>15</sup> Oklahoma – “Every person who materially participates or aids in a sale or purchase made by any person liable...or how directly or indirectly controls any person so liable, shall also be liable jointly and severally...”

<sup>16</sup> Pennsylvania – “Any person who willfully participates in any act or transactions in violation of section 402 shall be liable to any other person who purchased or sells any security at a price which was affected by the act or transaction for the damages sustained as a result of such act or transaction.”

1 8. In Section 509(g), the phrase “the purchaser not knowing of the untruth or omission” has  
2 been read as requiring proof that the plaintiff exercised reasonable care under the circumstances.  
3 S & F Supply Co. v. Hunter, 527 P.2d 217, 221 (Utah 1974); Darling & Co. v. Clouman, 87  
4 F.R.D. 756 (N.D. Ill. 1980). Neither causation nor reliance has been held to be an element of a  
5 private cause of action under the precursor to Section 509(b). See Gerhard W. Gohler, IRA v.  
6 Wood, 919 P.2d 561 (Utah 1996); Ritch v. Robinson-Humphrey Co., 748 So. 2d 861 (Ala.  
7 1999).

8  
9 In Kaufman v. i-Stat Corp., 754 A.2d 1188 (N.J. 2000), the New Jersey Supreme Court  
10 interpreted the New Jersey Uniform Securities law to require privity and misrepresentations but  
11 not reliance.

12  
13 9. The control liability provision in Section 509(g)(1) is modeled on Section 15 of the  
14 Securities Act of 1933 and Section 20(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. See 9 L. Loss  
15 & J. Seligman, Securities Regulations 4457-4475 (3d ed. 1992). State court decisions typically  
16 follow analogous federal law in deciding whether a person may be deemed a control person. See,  
17 e.g., Hines v. Data Line Sys., Inc., 787 P.2d 8, 13-16 (Wash. 1990). On the meaning of  
18 “control,” see 4 L. Loss & J. Seligman, Securities Regulations 1703-1727 (3d ed. rev. 2000).

19  
20 10. The defense of lack of knowledge in Section 509(g)(1)-(2) is modeled on Section 15 of  
21 the Securities Act of 1933 or Section 20(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. See  
22 generally 9 L. Loss & J. Seligman,

23  
24 Securities Regulation 4467-4475 (3d.1992). Washington’s Supreme Court contrasts this defense  
25 with the corporate law business judgment rule and “requires affirmative action on the part of a  
26 director who wished to avail himself of this defense.” Hines v. Data Line Sys., Inc., 787 P.2d 8,  
27 17-19 (Wash. 1990). Several jurisdictions have interpreted the provision to Section 509(g) to  
28 impose strict liability on partners, officers, and directors unless the statutory defense of lack of  
29 knowledge is proven. See, e.g., Taylor v. Perdition Minerals Group, Ltd., 766 P.2d 805, 809  
30 (Kan. 1988), citing cases; Hines v. Data Line Sys., Inc., 787 P.2d at 17. The plaintiff obviously  
31 does not have to allege a defendant’s scienter to deprive the defendant of the reasonable care  
32 defense. See Currie v. Cayman Resources Corp., 595 F. Supp. 1364, 1374 (N.D. Ga. 1984)  
33 (Texas statute).

34  
35  
36 11. Under Section 509(g)(2), an outside director may be held liable without actively  
37 participating in any of the illegal transactions. See Hines v. Data Line Sys., Inc. 787 P.2d 8, 16-  
38 18 (Wash. 1990). The Michigan precursor to Section 509(g)(2) imposes liability on directors of  
39 corporations offering securities who know or reasonably should have known of the presence of  
40 information that was false and misleading. There was no requirement that the plaintiff prove a  
41 specific intent to defraud. Molecular Technology Corp. v. Valentine, 925 F.2d 910, 920 & n.7  
42 (6th Cir. 1991).

43  
44 Under Section 509(g)(2) partners, officers, and directors are liable, subject to the defense  
45 afforded by that subsection, without proof that they aided in the sale.

46  
47 12. In Section 509(g)(12) partner is intended to be limited to partners with management  
48 responsibilities, rather than a partner with a passive investment.

1 13. The phrase “intentional or reckless” in Section 509(g)(3)-(4) means that the culpability  
2 standard under those subsections is intended to be identical to that which has developed under  
3 Rule 10b-5 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. See, e.g., 8 L. Loss & J. Seligman,  
4 Securities Regulation 3665-3668 (3d ed. rev. 1991) (after *Ernst & Ernst v. Hochfelder*, 425 U.S.  
5 185 (1976), at least 11 of 12 circuits had adopted intentionality of recklessness as the culpability  
6 standard under Rule 10b-5).

7  
8 14. On the interpretation of the “material aids” in Section 509(g)(3)-(4), see *Quick v.*  
9 *Woody*, 747 S.W.2d 108 (Ark. 1988); *Connecticut Nat’l Bank v. Giacomi*, 699 A.2d 101  
10 (Conn. 1997); *State v. Diacide Distrib., Inc.*, 596 N.W.2d 532 (Iowa 1991).

11  
12 In *Metal Tech Corp. v. Metal Techniques Co., Inc.* 703 P.2d 237, 245-246 (Or. App Ct. 1985)  
13 the court observed that merely acting as a scrivener or otherwise merely preparing and executing  
14 documents would not involve material aid. See generally *Heilbron v. ARC Energy Corp.* 757  
15 S.W.2d 294 (Mo. App. 1988) (president of a corporation that was the general partner of a limited  
16 partnership in which interest were sold without registration was jointly and severally liable under  
17 Missouri Uniform Securities Act to same extent as the limited partnership).

18  
19 This provision of the Uniform Act may be broader than Section 12(a)(1) of the Securities Act  
20 of 1933. See *Pinter v. Dahl*, 485 U.S. 622, 641-655 (1988). Cf. *Foster v. Jesup & Lamont Sec.*  
21 *Co., Inc.* 482 So. 2d 1201 (Ala. 1986) (holding that the “materially aids” standard of the Uniform  
22 Act is broader than the counterpart language in §12(a)(2)).

23  
24 The statutory language covers an employer. *Todaro v. E.F. Hutton & Co. Inc.*, 1982-1984  
25 Blue Sky L. Rep. (CCH) ¶71,957 at 70,413 (E.D. Va. 1982). But an auditor is not an agent per  
26 se. *Jenson v. Touche, Ross & Co.*, 355 N.W.2d 720, 729 (Minn. 1983). With respect to the  
27 activities that might bring a lawyer within this kind of language, see Annot., *Attorney’s*  
28 *Preparation of Legal Document Incident to Sale of Securities as Rendering Him Liable under*  
29 *State Securities Regulation Statutes*, 62 ALR3d 252. A lawyer may be liable without proof of  
30 knowledge of illegality, since a nonseller who “materially aids in the sale” is liable under Section  
31 509(g) unless he or she proves “that he did not know, and in the exercise of reasonable care could  
32 not have known, of the existence of the facts by reason of which the liability is alleged to exist.”  
33 See *Heilbron v. ARC Energy Corp.*, 757 S.W.2d at 296; *Prince v. Brydon*, 307 Or. 146, 764 P.2d  
34 1370 (1988).

35  
36 15. The “reasonable attorneys’ fees” specified in Section 509 are permissive, not mandatory.  
37 See, e.g., *Andrews v. Blue*, 489 F.2d 367, 377 (10th Cir. 1973), (Colorado Statute). A request for  
38 attorney’s fees may be made by motion a reasonable time after the final judgment under the  
39 Florida statute. *Arceneaux v. Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith, Inc.*, 767 F.2d 1498, 1503-  
40 1504 (11th Cir. 1985).

41  
42 16. The contribution provision in Section 509(h) is a safeguard to avoid the common law  
43 rule that prohibited contribution among joint tortfeasors. In *Black & Co., Inc. v. Nova-Tech,*  
44 *Inc.*, 333 F. Supp. 468, 471 (D. Or. 1971), the court held under the Oregon provision that, since  
45 indemnification was a traditional remedy for one who paid a loss caused by another, the  
46 legislature did not intend by including a right of contribution to exclude the right of indemnity.  
47 In *Hainbuchner v. Miner*, 509 N.E. 2d 424, 426 (Ohio 1987), the court held under the Ohio  
48 provision that the liability of a director in contribution is coextensive with his liability for

1 securities fraud in the underlying action.

2  
3 17. The statute of limitations in Section 509(j) is a hybrid of the 1956 Act and federal  
4 securities law approaches.

5  
6 The 1956 Act Section 410(p) provided that: “No person may sue under this section more  
7 than two years after the contract of sale.” Under this provision, the state courts generally  
8 declined to extend a statute of limitations period on grounds of fraudulent concealment or  
9 equitable tolling. See, e.g., *Martin v. Pacific Ins. Co. of N.Y.*, 431 S.W.2d 239,240 (Ark. 1968);  
10 *Norden v. Friedman*, 756 S.W.2d 158, 163 (Mo 1988); *Weisz v. Spindletop Oil & Gas Co.* 664  
11 S.W.2d 423, 425-426 (Tex. Ct. App. 1983); *McCullough v. Leede Oil & Gas, Inc.*, 617 F. Supp.  
12 384, 390-391 (W.D. Okla. 1985) (Alabama statute); *Reshal Assoc., Inc. v. Long Grove Trading*  
13 *Co.*, 754 F. Supp. 1226, 1242-1243 (N.D. Ill. 1990). But some state statutes expressly provided  
14 or have been construed to provide for tolling. See, e.g., *Platsis v. E. F. Hutton & Co., Inc.* 642 F.  
15 Supp. 1277, 1305 (W.D. Mich. 1986), *aff’d per curiam*, 829 F.2d 13 (6th Cir. 1987), *cert denied*,  
16 485 U.S. 962 (Michigan statute); *Barton v. Peterson*, 733 F. Supp. 1482, 1492-1493 (N.D. Ga.  
17 1990) (Georgia).

18  
19 Rule 10b-5 of the Securities Exchange Act, in contrast, as construed by the United States  
20 Supreme Court in *Lampf, Pleva, Lipkind, Prepis & Petigrew v. Gilbertson*, 501 U.S. 350 (1991),  
21 prohibits equitable tolling under the federal securities law one year after discovery and three  
22 years after the act formula. See generally 10 L. Loss & J. Seligman, *Securities Regulation* 4505-  
23 4525 (3d. ed. rev. 1996).

24  
25 Section 509(j)(1), as with the 1956 Act, is a unitary statute of repose, requiring an action to  
26 be commenced within one year a violation occurred. It is not intended that there be equitable  
27 tolling.

28  
29 Section 509(j)(2), in contrast, generally follows the federal securities law model. An action  
30 must be brought within the earlier of one year after actual discovery or four years after the  
31 violation. Unlike federal courts construing the statute of limitations under Rule 10b-5, which  
32 have cut off the plaintiff’s right to proceed one year after actual discovery “or after such  
33 discovery should have been made by the exercise of reasonable diligence” (inquiry notice), see,  
34 e.g., *Law v. Media Research, Inc.*, 113 F.3d 781 (7th Cir. 1997), an action under Section  
35 509(j)(2) is only cut off one year after *actual* discovery.

36  
37 18. Section 509(k) is similar to Section 29(b) of the Securities Exchange Act and is intended  
38 only to apply to actions to enforce illegal contracts. See L. Loss, *Commentary on the Uniform*  
39 *Securities Act* 150 (1976). Nevertheless at least one court has read the provision as barring an  
40 action for rescission by a purchaser with knowledge, allegedly, of the failure to register the  
41 securities. *Hayden v. McDonald*, 742 F.2d 423, 435-436 (8th Cir. 1984) (Unif. Sec. Act); cf.  
42 *Dunn v. Bemor Petroleum, Inc.*, 680 S.W.2d 304, 306 (Mo Ct. App. 1984) (recognition of  
43 defenses of estoppel and in part delicto “would defeat the purpose of our blue sky laws”). See  
44 also *Brannan v. Eisenstein*, 804 F.2d 1041-1045 (8th Cir. 1986).

45  
46 19. Section 509(m) follows the 1956 Act. Cf. *State ex rel. Corbin v. Pickrell*, 667 P.2d 1304  
47 (Ariz. 1983) (securities violations may be basis of Consumer Fraud Act complaint); *Knoell v.*  
48 *Huff*, 395 N.W.2d 749, 754 (Neb. 1986) (Nebraska blue sky law is not exclusive remedy under

1 state law for cases involving the sale of securities); *Campbell v. Moseley, Hallgarten, Estabrook*  
2 & *Weeden, Inc.*, 1984-1985 Fed. Sec. L. Rep. (CCH) ¶92,082 at 91,416-91,417 (N.D. Ill. 1985)  
3 (Illinois blue sky law does not preempt application of the state's Consumer Fraud Act to  
4 securities transactions).

5  
6 Nonetheless Section 509 and Section 411(e) are intended to be the exclusive private causes of  
7 action under this Act.

8  
9 20. The ICI recommends adding the following Official Comment:

10  
11 Under the National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996 there is no private  
12 right of action for the failure of an issuer of federal covered securities to make a notice  
13 filing or pay a notice filing fee under this Act.

14  
15  
16  
17 **SECTION 510. RESCISSION OFFERS.** A purchaser or seller may not commence an  
18 action under Section 509 if:

19 (1) the purchaser received in a record, before the action is commenced, an offer to  
20 repurchase:

21 (A) stating the respect in which liability under Section 509 may have arisen and fairly  
22 advising the purchaser of the purchaser's rights in connection with the offer to repurchase;

23 (B) if the basis for relief under this section may have been a violation of Section  
24 509(b), (d), or (f), offering to repurchase the security for cash, payable on delivery of the security,  
25 equal to the consideration paid, [together with interest at [\_\_\_] percent per year from the date of  
26 purchase,] less the amount of any income received on the security, or, if the purchaser no longer  
27 owns the security, offering to pay the purchaser upon acceptance of the offer an amount in cash  
28 equal to the damages computed in the manner provided in ~~subsection~~ this subparagraph (b); and

29 ~~(C)~~ (C) if the basis for relief under this section may have been a violation of Section  
30 509(f), with respect to a purchase ~~transaction~~, including financial and other information  
31 necessary to correct all material misstatements or omissions in the information which that was  
32 required by this [Act] to be furnished to the purchaser as of the time of the purchase of the

1 security by the purchaser; and

2 (D) if the basis for relief under this Section may have been a violation of Section  
3 509(c), offering to tender the security, on payment of an amount equal to the purchase price paid,  
4 less income received on the security, or if the purchaser no longer owns the security, offering to  
5 pay the seller upon acceptance of the offer the amount specified in Section 509(c)(3).

6 ~~(4)~~ (E) stating that the offer may be accepted by the purchaser within 30 days after the  
7 date of its receipt by the purchaser or any shorter period, not less than three days, that the  
8 administrator by order ~~prescribes~~ specifies;

9 (2) the offeror has the present ability to pay the amount offered under paragraph (1);

10 (3) the offer under paragraph (1) is delivered to the purchaser or sent in a manner that  
11 assures receipt by the purchaser; and

12 (4) if the purchaser accepts the offer in a record within the period specified under  
13 paragraph (3), the purchaser is paid in accordance with the terms of the offer.

## 14 **Comments**

15 1. A rescission offer must meet the specific requirements of Section 510 for civil liability  
16 under Section 509 to be extinguished. Cf. *Binder v. Gordian Sec., Inc.*, 742 F. Supp. 663, 666  
17 (N.D. Ga. 1990). A purchaser who accepts a statutory offer of rescission may not later sue for  
18 attorneys' fees incurred in seeking the rescission, although the court noted that fees would have  
19 been awarded if the plaintiff had prevailed in an action for rescission. *Brockman Indus., Inc., v.*  
20 *Carolina Sec. Corp.* 861 F.2d 798, 800-801 (4th Cir. 1988) (South Carolina statute). But see  
21 *Dixon v. Oppenheimer & Co., Inc.*, 739 F.2d 165 (4th Cir. 1984) (Virginia version precursor to  
22 Section 510 is limited to the securities sold in violation that the purchaser seeks to have  
23 rescinded). See generally Rowe, *Rescission Offers under Federal and State Securities Law*, 12 J.  
24 *Corp. L.* 383 (1987). In *Mashburn v. First Investors Corp.*, 432 S.E.2d 869 (N.C. App. 1993),  
25 *cert. denied*, 439 S.E.2d 18( ), the court relied on Brockmann and the Rowe article to dismiss a  
26 claim after a rescission offer had been accepted.

27  
28 2. A rescission offer that does not comply with Section 510 is subject to civil liability or  
29 administrative enforcement under this Act. A rescission offer, for example, could violate Section  
30 501, the general fraud provision.

31  
32 3. The administration may publish a form that would comply with Section 510, but the form  
33 would not be the only one that could be used by the parties.

1  
2 **ARTICLE 6**

3  
4 **ADMINISTRATION AND JUDICIAL REVIEW**

5  
6  
7 **SECTION 601. ADMINISTRATION OF [ACT].**

8  
9 (a) This [Act] shall be administered by the [insert title of ~~administration~~ *administrator* and  
10 any related provisions on such matters as method of selection, salary, term of office, selection and  
11 remuneration of personnel, annual reports to the legislature or governor which are appropriate to the  
12 particular State].

13 (b) It is unlawful for the administrator or any of the administrator's officers, employees [,  
14 or designees] to use for personal benefit or the benefit of others *records or other* information that  
15 is obtained by the administrator or is filed that is not public *under Section 607(b)*. This [Act] does  
16 not authorize the administrator or any of the administrator's officers, employees [, or designees] to  
17 disclose the information, ~~except among themselves, or when necessary or appropriate in a an action~~  
18 ~~or proceeding or investigation under this [Act], or in cooperation with other agencies in accordance~~  
19 with *Section 607 or* Section 608 9(a).

20 (c) This [Act] does not create or derogate from any privilege or exemption that exists at  
21 common law or otherwise when records or other evidence is sought under a subpoena.

22 **Comments**

23 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 406; RUSA Sections 701-702.

24 1. Each State, the District of Columbia, Guam, and Puerto Rico today have enacted an  
25 administrative procedure act. Article 6 has been drafted on the assumption that each state adopting  
26 this Act has a comprehensive administrative procedure act. It is the assumption of this Act that a  
27 person against whom an order may be issued or a sanction imposed generally is entitled to an  
28 administrative proceeding that affords procedural due process including notice and an opportunity  
29 for a hearing. It is similarly the assumption of this Act that rules adopted on orders issued under this  
30 Act are subject to judicial review. The specific provisions of this part are intended to augment the  
31 state administrative procedure act.

32  
33 2. Section 601(b) should be read with Section 607. Section 601(b) prohibits the administrator

1 or the administrator's officers and employees from using for personal benefit records or information  
2 that Section 607(b) specifies as not constituting public records. Section 601(b) is not intended to  
3 limit in any way the operation of Section 607(a). Neither subsection 601(b) nor 607(b) is intended  
4 to impede the ability of the agencies specified in subsection 608(a) to share records or other  
5 information in connection with an examination or an investigation. Cf. Griffin v. S.W. Devanney  
6 & Co., Inc., 775 P.2d 555 (Colo. 1989) (Colorado equivalent to subsection 601(b) does not prohibit  
7 the administrator from disclosing to other regulators and law enforcement agencies information  
8 regarding possible law enforcement violations obtained by the administrator during an examination  
9 of a broker-dealer's books and records).

10  
11 3. Section 601(c) makes clear that nothing in this Act alters the availability of evidentiary  
12 privileges. That question is left to the general law of the particular state.  
13

14  
15  
16 **SECTION 602. INVESTIGATIONS AND SUBPOENAS.**

17 (a) The administrator:

18 (1) may make public or private investigations within or outside of this State that the  
19 administrator considers necessary or appropriate to determine whether any person has violated, is  
20 violating, or is about to violate this [Act] or a rule adopted or order issued under this [Act], or to aid  
21 in the enforcement of this [Act] or in the adoption of rules and forms under this [Act];

22 (2) may require or permit a person to testify, file a statement, or produce a record, under  
23 oath or otherwise as the administrator determines, as to all the facts and circumstances concerning  
24 the matter to be a an action or proceeding, or an investigated; and

25 (3) may publish information concerning a proceeding, or an investigation under, or a  
26 violation of, this [Act] or a rule adopted or order issued under this [Act] if the administrator  
27 determines it is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

28 (b) For the purpose of an investigation under this [Act], the administrator or a designated  
29 officer may administer oaths and affirmations, subpoena witnesses, seek compulsion of attendance,  
30 take evidence, and require the production of any records that the administrator considers relevant  
31 or material to the investigation.

32 (c) If a person fails or refuses to testify, to file a statement, to produce records, or to

1 obey a subpoena issued by the administrator or a designated officer under this [Act], the  
2 administrator [may refer the matter to the Attorney General or the proper attorney, who] may  
3 apply to [insert name of appropriate court] or a court of another State to enforce compliance. The  
4 court may order any or all of the following:

5 (1) ~~order~~ the person to appear before the administrator or a designated officer;

6 (2) the person to testify about the matter under investigation or in question;

7 ~~(2)~~ (3) production of records;

8 ~~(3)~~ (4) injunctive relief, including restricting or prohibiting the offer or sale of  
9 securities or providing investment advice;

10 ~~(4)~~ (5) a civil penalty against the person not less than [\$\_\_] and not greater than [\$\_\_]  
11 per violation;

12 ~~(5)~~ (6) ~~an order finding~~ holding the person in contempt; or

13 ~~(6)~~ (7) any other necessary or appropriate relief.

14 [Nothing in this subsection precludes a person from applying to [insert name of appropriate  
15 court] or a court of another state for relief from a request to appear, testify, protect records, file  
16 a statement, or obey a subpoena.]

17 (d) An individual is not excused from attending in obedience to the subpoena of the  
18 administrator or a designated officer [or in a proceeding instituted by the administrator] on the  
19 ground that the required testimony, statement, or record, or other evidence, directly or indirectly,  
20 may tend to incriminate the individual or subject the individual to a fine, penalty or forfeiture. If  
21 the individual asserts a claim against self-incrimination, the administrator may apply [in the  
22 appropriate court] to compel the testimony, the filing of the statement, or the production of the  
23 record. If the testimony, the filing of the statement, or the production of the record is compelled,  
24 the information, record, or other evidence, directly or indirectly, may not be used against the

1 individual so compelled in a criminal case, except that the individual testifying or providing the  
2 statement is not exempt from prosecution and punishment for perjury or contempt committed in  
3 testifying or in the statement.

4 (e) At the request of the securities regulator of another State or a foreign jurisdiction, the  
5 administrator may provide assistance if the requesting regulator states that it is conducting an  
6 investigation to determine whether a person has violated, is violating, or is about to violate a law  
7 or rule of the other State or foreign jurisdiction relating to securities matters that the requesting  
8 regulator administers or enforces. The administrator may, in its sole discretion, conduct the  
9 investigation and use the powers conferred by this section as the administrator determines is  
10 necessary *or appropriate* to collect information, records, and evidence pertinent to the request for  
11 assistance. The ~~assistance~~ information may be provided without regard to whether the facts  
12 stated in the request would also constitute a violation of this [Act] or ~~the~~ other laws of this State.  
13 In deciding whether to provide the assistance, the administrator shall consider whether the  
14 requesting regulator is permitted and has agreed to provide assistance reciprocally within its State  
15 or foreign jurisdiction to the administrator on securities matters when required; whether  
16 compliance with the request would violate or prejudice the public policy of this State; and the  
17 availability of resources and staff of the administrator to carry out the request for assistance.

## 18 **Comments**

### 19 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 407

20 1. Sections 602 (a)-(b) follow the 1956 Act, which was modeled generally on Sections 21(a)-(d)  
21 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 as it then read.

22  
23 2. Standards for issuance of subpoenas have been consistently recognized in federal and state  
24 securities law. See, e.g., 10 L. Loss & J. Seligman, Securities Regulation 4917-4937 (3d ed. rev.  
25 1996) (discussing Oklahoma Press Pub. Co. v. Walling, 327 U.S. 186 (1946) and other cases).

26  
27 3. Sections 602(c) amplifies the last sentence of Section 407(c) of the 1956 Act which had  
28 provided in toto: “Failure to obey the order of the court may be punished by the court as a contempt  
29 of court.” See Feigin v. Colorado Nat’l Bank, N.A., 879 P.2d 814, 818-819 (Colo. 1995).

1 4. Section 602 is intended to apply generally to securities offers and sales under Article 3 and  
2 broker-dealer and investment adviser activity under Article 4, when there is noncompliance with the  
3 first sentence of Section 602(c). This subsection does not limit the powers of an administrator under  
4 other provisions of this Act.

5  
6 5. Where appropriate under Section 602(d), an administrator could move to authorize admission  
7 of a requesting state's attorney under existing *pro hac vice* rules.

8  
9 6. Section 602(e) is consistent with the Securities Litigation Uniform Standard Act of 1998  
10 which provides in Section 102(e):

11  
12 The Securities and Exchange Commission, in consultation with State securities  
13 commissions (or any agencies or offices performing like functions), shall seek to  
14 encourage the adoption of State laws providing for reciprocal enforcement by State  
15 securities commissions of subpoenas issued by another State securities commission  
16 seeking to compel persons to attend, testify in, or produce documents or records in  
17 connection with an action or investigation by a State securities commission of an  
18 alleged violation of State securities laws.

19  
20 7. The scope of subpoena enforcement in each state is a general matter for judicial  
21 determination. Under Section 602, an individual subpoenaed to testify by the administrator is not  
22 compelled to testify within the meaning of these sections simply by service of a subpoena. Under  
23 Section 602(b) the individual can be subpoenaed and compelled to attend. Once in attendance an  
24 individual can assert an evidentiary privilege or exemption, see Section 601(c), including the Fifth  
25 Amendment privilege against self-incrimination. If an individual refuses to testify or give evidence,  
26 the administrator may apply (or have the appropriate state attorney apply) to the appropriate court  
27 for the relief specified in Section 602(c). If the individual invokes the privilege against self-  
28 incrimination, Section 602(d) allows the administrator to apply to the appropriate court to compel  
29 testimony under a "use immunity" provision barring the record compelled or other evidence obtained  
30 being used in a criminal case. See *People v. District Co. of Arapahoe County*, 894 P.2d 739 (Colo.  
31 1995).

32  
33  
34  
35 **SECTION 603. CIVIL ENFORCEMENT.**

36 (a) ~~In addition to administrative enforcement under Sections 604 and 605,~~ Whenever it  
37 appears to the administrator that a person has engaged, is engaging, or is about to engage in an  
38 act or practice constituting~~f~~, or that a person is ~~aiding and abetting~~ intentionally or recklessly  
39 materially aids or abets the conduct giving rise to a violation of this [Act] or a rule adopted or  
40 order issued under this [Act], the administrator may maintain an action in the [insert the name of  
41 appropriate court] to enjoin the acts or practices and to enforce compliance with this [Act] or a  
42

1 rule adopted or order issued under this [Act]. In an action ~~maintained~~ under this section and upon  
2 a proper showing, the court may

3 (1) grant or require a permanent or temporary injunction, restraining order, a  
4 declaratory judgment, asset freeze, accounting, writ of attachment, writ of general or specific  
5 execution, or writ of mandamus and appoint a receiver or conservator, who may be the  
6 administrator, for the defendant or the defendant's assets;

7 (2) order the administrator to take charge and control of a party's property, including  
8 investment accounts and accounts in a depository institution, rents, and profits; to collect debts;  
9 and to acquire and dispose of property;

10 (3) enter an order of rescission, civil penalty up to a maximum of [\$\_\_] for a single  
11 violation or of [\$\_\_] for multiple violations in a single proceeding or a series of related  
12 proceedings, ~~a declaratory judgment~~, restitution, or disgorgement directed to a person ~~who~~ that  
13 has engaged in an act or practice constituting a violation of this [Act] or a the predecessor act or a  
14 rule adopted or order issued under this [Act] or the predecessor act; or

15 (4) order the payment of prejudgment and postjudgment interest or other relief the  
16 court considers just; ~~and~~

17 [(b) No action shall be maintained to enhance any liability created under Section  
18 603(a)(3) unless brought within five years of the discovery of the facts constituting the violation.]

19 (b c) The court may not require the administrator to post a bond.

20  
21 QUERY: Should 603(a)(2) be deleted or put in a Reporter's Note?

## 22 Comments

23 1. In Section 412, in brackets, the administrator may seek censure, a civil penalty, or suspension  
24 or bar of registered broker-dealers, agents, investment advisers, investment adviser representatives,  
25 or associated persons.  
26

1 2. Constitutional due process considerations can also be addressed by rulemaking or  
2 incorporation of the applicable administrative procedure act provisions of each jurisdiction. The  
3 term “upon a proper showing” has a settled meaning in the federal securities laws. See, e.g.,  
4 Securities Act of 1933 Section 20(b).

5  
6 3. Section 603(b) includes bracketed language proposing a five year statute of limitations, which  
7 is modeled on the statute of limitations applied to the Securities and Exchange Commission in  
8 Johnson v. SEC, 87 F.3d 484 (D.C. Cir. 1996) (five year statute of limitations of 28 U.S.C. Section  
9 2462 is applicable to SEC administrative proceedings).

10  
11 4. A primary purpose of a broad range of potential sanctions is to enable administrators to better  
12 tailor appropriate sanctions to particular misconduct.

13  
14  
15  
16 **SECTION 604. ADMINISTRATIVE ENFORCEMENT.**

17  
18 (a) Whenever it appears to the administrator that a person has engaged, is engaging, or is  
19 about to engage in an act or practice constituting a violation of this [Act], or a rule adopted under  
20 or order issued under this [Act]-[or that a person is ~~aiding and abetting a~~ *intentionally or recklessly*  
21 *materially aiding and abetting the conduct giving rise to such a* violation] of this [Act]] the  
22 administrator may: ~~do one or more of the following:~~

23 (1) Issue ~~a summary~~ *an* order directing the person to cease and desist from engaging in  
24 the act or practice or to take other action as is necessary or appropriate to comply with ~~the~~  
25 requirements of this [Act], ~~[and effect service or the summary order on the person].~~ *The*  
26 *administrator must provide service of process as required by Section 612.* If a hearing is not timely  
27 requested, the ~~summary~~ order becomes final by operation of law. The order ~~shall~~ remain effective  
28 from the date of issuance until the date the order becomes final by operation of law or is ~~overturned~~  
29 by a ~~[an administrative law judge or presiding officer]~~ or court following a request for hearing.  
30 *vacated or modified.* A person against whom *an* ~~summary~~ order has been issued under this  
31 ~~subsection paragraph~~ may contest the order by filing a request for a ~~contested case proceeding~~  
32 *hearing* as provided in [the state administrative procedure act] or in accordance with rules adopted  
33 by the administrator under this [Act]. The person must file the request within 30 days ~~from~~ after the

1 date ~~that~~ the order is served, or the order becomes final by operation of law.

2 (2) After notice and opportunity for hearing [in accordance with the state administrative  
3 procedure act], issue an order imposing civil penalty ~~in an amount not to exceed~~ up to a maximum  
4 [of \$\_\_\_\_] for a single violation or of [\$ \_\_\_\_] for multiple violations in a single proceeding or a series  
5 of related proceedings ~~for each violation~~ against a person that violates an order served under  
6 paragraph (1):

7 (3) If a petition for judicial review of an order under paragraph (2) is not timely filed [in  
8 accordance with the state administrative procedure act], file a certified copy of the administrator's  
9 order with the clerk of a court of competent jurisdiction, which shall be treated and have the same  
10 effect as a judgment of the court and may be recorded, enforced, or satisfied in the same manner as  
11 a judgment of the court.

12 (4) If a person violates an order issued under paragraph (1) or (2) ~~[without having~~  
13 ~~petitioned for judicial review]~~, the administrator may petition a court of competent jurisdiction~~],~~  
14 with ~~notice~~ service to the person as specified in Section 612, to enforce the order as certified by the  
15 administrator. The court shall not require the administrator to post a bond.

16 (b) If on petition by the administrator, the court finds after notice and opportunity for a  
17 hearing that the person is not in compliance with the order, the court shall adjudge the person in civil  
18 contempt of the order. The court may ~~assess~~ impose a further civil penalty against the person for  
19 contempt in an amount not less than [\$\_\_\_\_] but not greater than [\$\_\_\_\_] for each violation, and may  
20 issue such other rulings as it determines are appropriate.

## 21 **Comments**

22 1. In this Act actions to deny, revoke, suspend, cancel, withdraw, restrict, condition or limit  
23 registration must be brought under Section 412.

24  
25 2. The FPA has proposed a reasonable limit on civil fines for notice filings violations.  
26  
27

1 **~~SECTION 605. EMERGENCY ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEEDINGS.~~**

2 (a) ~~The administrator may use emergency administrative proceedings if the proceedings are in~~  
3 ~~the public interest or for the protection of investors. If the administrator initiates a proceeding under~~  
4 ~~this subsection, the administrator shall issue an order, including a brief statement of findings of fact,~~  
5 ~~conclusions of law, and, if it is an exercise of the agency's discretion, policy reasons for the decision~~  
6 ~~to justify the determination that the proceedings are in the public interest or for the protection of~~  
7 ~~investors and the administrator's decision to take the specific action. The administrator must give~~  
8 ~~the notice as is practicable to persons that who are required to comply with the order. The order is~~  
9 ~~effective when issued.~~

10 (b) ~~After issuing an order under subsection (a), the administrator shall proceed as expeditiously~~  
11 ~~as feasible to provide the same right to request a hearing that is required under Section 604.~~

12 (c) ~~The record of the administrator under subsection (a) consists of the official records regarding~~  
13 ~~the matter which were considered, prepared, submitted to, or obtained by the administrator. The~~  
14 ~~administrator shall maintain these records as the official record.~~

15 (d) ~~Unless otherwise required by law, the administrator's official record under subsection (a)~~  
16 ~~need not constitute the exclusive basis for the administrator's action in an emergency administrative~~  
17 ~~proceeding or for judicial review of the emergency action.~~

18  
19 **SECTION 606 5. RULES, FORMS, ORDERS, INTERPRETATIVE OPINIONS, AND**  
20 **HEARINGS.**

21 (a) [Issuance and Adoption of Forms, Orders, and Rules.] The administrator may issue  
22 forms, orders, and after notice and comment, may adopt, amend and rescind repeal the rules, and  
23 issue the forms and orders that are when necessary or appropriate to carry out this [Act],  
24 including rules and forms governing registration statements, applications, notice filings, reports,

1 and other records, and define terms, whether or not used in this [Act], when these definitions are  
2 not inconsistent with this [Act]. For the purposes of rules and forms, the administrator may  
3 classify securities, persons, and transactions and adopt different requirements for different  
4 classes.

5 (b) [Objective of Uniformity.] A rule or form may not be adopted, amended, or repealed,  
6 or an order issued, amended, or vacated, unless the administrator finds that the rule, form, or  
7 order is necessary or appropriate in the public interest ~~or for~~ and the protection of investors and  
8 consistent with the purposes fairly intended by this [Act]. In adopting rules and forms, the  
9 administrator may cooperate under Section 609~~8~~ to effectuate the purposes of this [Act] and to  
10 achieve uniformity among the States in the form and content of registration statements,  
11 applications, reports, and other records. The administrator, by rule or order, may adopt a uniform  
12 form.

13 (c) [Financial Statements.] A financial statement filed under this [Act] ~~shall~~ must be  
14 prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States, unless  
15 the administrator, by rule or order, waives this requirement. ~~(d) Except to the extent as~~ limited by  
16 Section 15(h) of the Securities Exchange Act or Section 222 of the Investment Advisers Act of  
17 1940, the administrator, by rule or order, may ~~prescribe~~ specify:

- 18 (1) the form and content of financial statements required under this [Act];  
19 (2) ~~the circumstances under which~~ whether unconsolidated financial statements ~~must~~  
20 may be filed; and  
21 (3) whether required financial statements must be audited by an independent certified  
22 public accountant.

23 (d) [Interpretative opinions.] The administrator may ~~on request~~ provide interpretative  
24 opinions or may issue determinations that the administrator will not institute an enforcement

1 proceeding or commence an action against a specified person for engaging in a specified act or  
2 practice if the determination is consistent with the purposes intended by this [Act]. The  
3 administrator, by rule or order, may assess a reasonable charge for interpretative opinions or  
4 determinations that it will not commence an action or initiate an enforcement proceeding.

5 ~~(e) The administrator shall make all rules, forms and orders available to the public.~~

6 ~~(f) (e) [Effect of compliance.]~~ No penalty or liability under this [Act] ~~shall~~ may be  
7 imposed for conduct that is engaged in or omitted in good faith conformity with a rule, form, or  
8 order of the administrator under this [Act].

9 ~~(g) (f) [Presumption for public hearings.]~~ A hearing in an administrative proceeding  
10 under this [Act] must be conducted publicly unless the administrator ~~[for good cause consistent~~  
11 ~~with the purposes of the [Act] determines shown]~~ grants a request ~~[joined in by all the~~  
12 ~~respondents]~~ that the hearing not be conducted publicly.

### 13 **Comments**

14 Source of Law: 1956 Act Section 412; 1987 NASAA Proposed Amendment to Section 412(a);  
15 RUSA Sections 705, 707.

16  
17 1. It is anticipated that the administrator will make amendments under Section 605(a) to remain  
18 coordinate with relevant federal law, including the rules of the National Association of Securities  
19 Dealers, and to achieve uniformity among the States. See Section 612.

20  
21 2. Uniform forms such as Form B-D, U-4, and U-5 are today common in the securities industry  
22 and would be authorized by section 605(b).

23  
24 3. Section 605(c) refers to generally accepted accounting principles in the United States which  
25 currently are promulgated by the Financial Accounting Standards Board and the Securities and  
26 Exchange Commission.

27  
28 4. It is anticipated that the states will employ e-mail or other electronic means to provide notice  
29 of proposed rulemaking or adoption of new rules, rule amendments, forms or form amendments,  
30 statements of policy or interpretations adopted by the administrator, and issuance of orders to  
31 registrants and others who have provided a current e-mail or similar address and expressed an  
32 interest in receiving such notice.

33  
34 5. Section 605(e) does not apply to staff no action or interpretative opinions, but does apply to  
35 rules, forms, orders, statements of policy or interpretations adopted by the administrator.

1 6. Pennsylvania urges that Section 605(a) also authorize an administrator to waive any provision  
2 this statute or a rule, similar to the power in Section 203.  
3  
4  
5

6 **SECTION 606. ADMINISTRATIVE FILES AND OPINIONS.**

7 (a) ~~[Public register of filings.]~~ The administrator shall maintain, or have its designee  
8 maintain, a register of all applications for registration of securities; registration statements; notice  
9 filings, all applications for registration of broker-dealers, agents, investment advisers, and investment  
10 adviser representatives; ~~registration,~~ all notice filings by a federal covered investment adviser ~~which~~  
11 ~~that~~ are or have been effective under this [Act] and the predecessor act; ~~all~~ notices of claims of  
12 exemption from registration or notice filing requirements contained in a record; ~~all~~ orders issued  
13 under this [Act] and the predecessor act; and all interpretative opinions or no-action determinations  
14 issued under this [Act].

15 (b) ~~[Public availability.] The administrator shall make all rules, forms, and orders available~~  
16 ~~to the public.~~

17 (c) ~~[Copies of public records.]~~ Upon request, The administrator shall furnish to a person a  
18 copy of a record that is a public record ~~or a certification that there is no record.~~ The administrator,  
19 by rule or order, may ~~prescribe~~ assess a reasonable charges for furnishing the record. A copy  
20 certified by the administrator or its designee is prima facie evidence of the record certified.

21 **Comments**

22 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 413; RUSA Section 709.

23 1. “Record” is defined in Section 102(25).

24 2. Compliance with a state comprehensive records law will typically satisfy the requirements  
25 of Section 606(a).  
26  
27

28 **SECTION 608 ~~7.~~ PUBLIC RECORDS; CONFIDENTIALITY.**

1           (a) ~~[Presumption of public records.]~~ Except as otherwise provided in subsection ~~(e)~~ (b),  
2 records obtained by the administrator or filed, including information contained in or filed with any  
3 registration statement, application, notice filing, or report, are public records and are available for  
4 public examination.

5           ~~(e)~~ (b) ~~[Nonpublic records.]~~ The following records and other information are not public  
6 records under subsection (a); ~~and are not public records under subsection or (b):~~

7           (1) a record and other information obtained by the administrator in connection with an  
8 examination under Section ~~40911~~(c) or an investigation under Section 602;

9           (2) a record filed in connection with a registration statement under Sections 301 and 303  
10 through 305 or a report under Section ~~40911~~(d), to the extent it contains trade secrets or confidential  
11 information and the person filing the registration statement or report has asserted a claim of  
12 confidentiality or privilege that is authorized by law;

13           (3) ~~a~~ records and other information that is not required ~~or~~ to be provided to the  
14 administrator or filed under this [Act] and is provided to the administrator only on the condition that  
15 the information will not be subject to public examination or disclosure;

16           (4) nonpublic records and other information received from a ~~securities agency, law person~~  
17 ~~enforcement agency or agency or administrator specified in section 609; and~~

18           (5) any social security number, residence address, and residence telephone number  
19 contained in a record that is filed[]; and

20           ~~{~~(6) information or records obtained by the administrator through a designee which have  
21 been ~~deleted~~ expunged from by the designee or designated as nonpublic or nondisclosable by the  
22 designee].

23           ~~(d)~~ (c) ~~[Administrator Discretion to Disclose.]~~ The [administrator] may disclose:

24           (1) records and information obtained in connection with an examination under Section

1 ~~411(c) or an~~ investigation under subSection 602(a) to the extent provided in subSection 602(c) and  
2 subject to the restrictions of paragraph ~~(d)~~(2); and

3 (2) ~~records and~~ information obtained in connection with an ~~examination under Section~~  
4 ~~411(c) or an~~ investigation under subSection 602(a), if disclosure is for the purpose of a civil,  
5 administrative, or criminal investigation or ~~administrative, or criminal investigation or~~ proceeding  
6 by a ~~regulator, commission, organization or agency~~ person specified in subSection 609 §(a), and the  
7 receiving ~~regulator, commission, organization, or agency~~ person represents in writing that under  
8 applicable law protections exist to preserve the integrity, confidentiality, and security of the  
9 information.

10 ~~(e) (d) [No impact or privileges or exemptions.]~~ This section does not create or diminish a  
11 privilege or exemption existing at common law, by statute, rule, or otherwise.

## 12 **Comments**

13 Source of Law: RUSA Section 703; SEC Rule Section 200.80(b)(4); Securities Exchange Act  
14 of 1934 Sections 24(d)-(e).

15  
16 1. Records and other information obtained by an administrator in connection with an  
17 examination under subsection 411(c) or an investigation under Section 602 may be made public in  
18 the enforcement action, even if records and other information would otherwise be subject to  
19 subsection 607(b)(1).

20  
21 2. Section 607 may insulate from public disclosure records or other information that may be  
22 available under a state freedom of information or open records act. Unless the state freedom of  
23 information or open records act implements a constitutional provision, this Act as the later and more  
24 specific enactment should control as a matter of statutory construction. A state may amend its  
25 freedom of information or open records act to eliminate any inconsistency.

26  
27 3. Pennsylvania opposes allowing issuers under Section 607(c)(2) to “self-certify” that  
28 information in a registration statement is confidential and prefers requiring the SEC approval  
29 approach under Rule 406 issued under the Securities Act of 1933.

## 30 31 32 33 **SECTION 609 §. COOPERATION WITH OTHER AGENCIES.**

34 (a) The administrator may cooperate with the securities regulators of one or more States,

1 Canadian jurisdictions, or another country; the Securities and Exchange Commission; the  
2 Commodity Futures Trading Commission, the Federal Trade Commission, the Securities Investor  
3 Protection Corporation, a self regulatory organization, a national or international organization of  
4 securities ~~officials or agencies~~ regulators, banking and insurance ~~agencies~~ regulators, and any  
5 governmental law enforcement or regulatory agency.

6 (b) The cooperation authorized by subsection (a) includes the following actions:

7 (1) establishing or employing a designee as a central depository for registration and notice  
8 filings under this [Act] and for records required or allowed to be maintained under this [Act];

9 (2) developing common forms;

10 (3) making a joint examination or investigation;

11 (4) holding a joint administrative hearing;

12 (5) filing and prosecuting a joint civil or administrative proceeding;

13 (6) sharing and exchanging personnel;

14 (7) coordinating registration under Sections 301 and 401 through 404 with other States  
15 ~~jurisdictions~~, the Securities and Exchange Commission, and self-regulatory organizations;

16 (8) sharing and exchanging information and records;

17 (9) formulating[, in accordance with the [administrative procedure act] of this State,]  
18 rules, statements of policy, guidelines, forms, and interpretative opinions and releases;

19 (10) formulating common systems and procedures; and

20 (11) public notification of proposed rules, forms, statements of policy, and guidelines.

## 21 **Comments**

22 **Prior Provision:** RUSA Section 704.

23 1. Uniformity of regulation among the states and coordination with the Securities and Exchange  
24 Commission is a principal objective of this Act. See also Section 612. Section 608 is intended to  
25 encourage such cooperation to the maximum extent appropriate.  
26



1 whether or not either party is then present in this State, when the offer:

2 (1) originates from this State; or

3 (2) is directed by the offeror to this State and received at the place to which it is directed  
4 [or at any post office in this State, in the case of a mailed offer].

5 (d) For the purpose of this section, an offer to buy or to sell is accepted in this State when  
6 acceptance:

7 (1) is communicated to the offeror in this State; and

8 (2) has not previously been communicated to the offeror, orally or in a record, outside  
9 this State and is communicated to the offeror in this State, whether or not either party is then  
10 present in this State, when the offeree directs it to the offeror in this State reasonably believing  
11 the offeror to be in this State and it is received at a place in this State to which it is directed [or at  
12 any post office in this State, in the case of a mailed acceptance].

13 (e) An offer to sell or to buy is not made in this State when a publisher circulates or there  
14 is circulated on the publisher's behalf in this State ~~a~~ any bona fide newspaper or other publication  
15 of general, regular, and paid circulation that is not published in this State, or that is published in  
16 this State but has had more than two-thirds of its circulation outside this State during the  
17 previous 12 months, or a radio or television program or other electronic communication  
18 originating outside this State is received in this State. A radio or television program or other  
19 electronic communication is considered as having originated in this State if either the broadcast  
20 studio or the originating source of transmission is located in this State, unless:

21 (1) the program or communication is syndicated and distributed from outside this  
22 State for redistribution to the general public in this State;

23 (2) the program or communication is supplied by a radio, television, or other  
24 electronic network with the electronic signal originating from outside this State for redistribution

1 to the general public in this State;

2 (3) the program or communication is an electronic signal that originates outside this  
3 State and is captured for redistribution to the general public in this State by a community antenna  
4 or cable, radio, cable television, or other electronic system; or

5 (4) the program or communication consists of an electronic signal that originates in  
6 this State, but which is not intended for redistribution to the general public in this State.

7 (f) Sections 403(a), 404(a), ~~405(a)~~, 502, ~~505~~, and 506 apply to a person when any act  
8 or ~~conduct~~ practice instrumental in effecting prohibited conduct is engaged in this State, whether  
9 or not either party is then present in this State.

### 10 **Comments**

11 Source of Law: 1956 Act Section 414; NASAA Proposed 1986 and 1997 Amendments to  
12 Section 414; and RUSA Sections 708, 801.

13  
14 1. Under subsection 202(18) out-of-state offers or sales are exempt from securities  
15 registration.

16  
17 2. The phrase “other electronic means” is coextensive with computer or other information  
18 technology permitted by subsections 102(8), 102(25).

19 3. The Internet raises new jurisdictional issues, as one commentator theorizes because  
20 application of state blue sky laws to securities transactions has traditionally been based on  
21 location, i.e., the laws of a given state seek to regulate transactions occurring within the state's  
22 boundaries. Rice, *The Regulatory Response to the New World of Cybersecurities*, 51 *Admin. L.*  
23 *Rev.* 901, 930-931 (1999). It is uncertain whether the existing statutory approach will remain  
24 adequate. “Despite the additional complexities, existing principles can be used to view e-mail  
25 over the Internet as similar to traditional postal mail and phone calls in providing a basis for  
26 jurisdiction.” *Id.* at 933. See also *id.* at 944-945; ABA Global Cyberspace Jurisdiction Project,  
27 55 *Bus. Law.* 1801, 1931-1937 (2000).

28  
29 4. Courts have interpreted the precursor to Section 610(a) as applicable if there was a  
30 physical nexus between the sale or offer to sell and a specific state. See, e.g. *Ah Moo v. A. G.*  
31 *Becker Paribas, Inc.*, 857 F.2d 615, 620 (9th Cir. 1988).

32  
33 In *Shappley v. State*, 520 S.W.2d 766, 768 (Tex. Crim. App. 1974), the court held: “If the  
34 offer was made within the state, it would be immaterial whether it was intended that the sale  
35 would be finally consummated in another state.” Similarly it is immaterial that a solicitation  
36 originated outside the forum state if the solicitation was received within the forum state. See,

1 e.g., *DuPont v. Becker*, 375 F. Supp. 959, 962 n.2 (D. Mass. 1974) *aff'd without pub. op.*, 508  
2 F.2d 834 (1st Cir. 1974). See also *Parvin v. Davis Oil Co.*, 524 F.2d 112, 117 (9th Cir. 1975);  
3 *Petrites v. J.C. Brandford & Co.*, 646 F.2d 1033, 1036-1037 (5th Cir. 1981); *Stimmel v.*  
4 *Shearson, Hammill & Co.*, 411 F. Supp. 345, 348-349 (D. Or. 1976); *Oil Resources, Inc. v. State*  
5 *of Fla. Dep't of Banking & Fin., Div. of Sec.*, 583 F. Supp. 1027, 1030 (S.D. Fla. 1984), *aff'd*  
6 *without pub. op.* 746 F.2d 814 (11th Cir. 1984).  
7

8 In *Booth v. Verity*, 124 F. Supp. 2d 452, 459 (W.D. Ky. 2000) (Kentucky law), the court held  
9 that the mere ability to view a passive web page or mass media report was an insufficient contact  
10 with a state to render an out-of-state defendant subject to that state's jurisdiction.  
11

12 5. Application of the Section 610(c)(2) formula has been held to afford due process of law.  
13 *Green v. Weis, Voison, Cannon, Inc.* 479 F.2d 462 (7th Cir. 1973).  
14

15 In *Newsome ex rel. Oklahoma Sec. Comm. v. Diamond Oil Producers, Inc.*, 1982-1984 Blue  
16 Sky L. Rep. (CCH) ¶71,869 (Okla. Dist. Ct. 1983), the court applied the precursor to Section  
17 610(c)(1) even though the offer in the state to which it was directed had been made in accordance  
18 with the laws of that state. It would be incompatible with the purposes of the Act to exclude such  
19 sales from regulation, the court said, because that would create a "safe harbor" from which a  
20 promoter could operate with impunity so long as he or she never ventured into the states in which  
21 the purchasers resided.  
22

23 In *Haberman v. Washington Pub. Power Supply Sys.*, 109 Wash. 2d 107, 134-136, 744 P.2d  
24 1032, 1053-1054 (en banc 1987), appeal dismissed sub nom. *American Express Related Serv.*  
25 *Co. v. Washington Pub. Power Sys.*, 488 U.S. 805, which grew out of a bond issue by the System  
26 to finance two nuclear power plants, the court applied the "most significant relationship"  
27 standard to conclude that Washington was clearly the state with the most substantial contracts  
28 with the subject matter of the case.  
29

30 Cf. *Singer v. Magnavox Co.*, 380 A.2d 969, 981 (Del. 1977), where the Delaware Supreme  
31 Court refused to apply the Delaware Blue Sky Law "simply because the company is incorporated  
32 here." Cf. also *State of Wis. v. Mattes*, 175 Wis. 2d 572, 499 N.W.2d 711 (Wis. Ct. App. 1993)  
33 (establishing venue in county in which defendant accepted and negotiated checks).  
34

35 6. With respect to Section 610(d), see *Cody v. Ward*, 954 F. Supp. 43 (D. Conn. 1997),  
36 where a federal district court concluded that Connecticut could extend its version of the Uniform  
37 Securities Act to a non-resident who sent oral and written misrepresentations into the state.  
38

39 7. With respect to Section 610(e), cf. *Martin v. Steubner*, 652 F.2d 652 (6th Cir. 1981),  
40 where an advertisement of a Minnesota real estate limited partnership was placed in the Wall  
41 Street Journal and read by the plaintiff in Ohio. This alone would not establish Ohio as a forum  
42 state. But the plaintiff also wrote from and received a written reply in Ohio, in addition to  
43 causing \$100,000 to be transferred from an Ohio broker to the defendant's bank in Minnesota,  
44 and was mailed a subscription agreement in Ohio which was signed in that state. On these latter  
45 bases the court concluded that there were sufficient contacts with Ohio. *Id.* at 653.  
46  
47  
48

1           **SECTION 611. SERVICE OF PROCESS.**

2           (a) A consent to service of process required by this [Act] ~~shall~~ must be signed and filed  
3 in the form the administrator, by rule, specifies. An irrevocable consent appointing the  
4 administrator the person's agent for service of process in a noncriminal proceeding against the  
5 person, a successor, or personal representative, which arises under this [Act] or a rule adopted or  
6 order issued by the administrator under this [Act] after the consent is filed, has the same force  
7 and validity as if served personally on the person filing the consent.

8           (b) A person that has filed a consent complying with subsection (a) in connection with a  
9 previous application for registration or notice filing need not file an additional consent.

10          (c) If a person, including a nonresident of this State, engages in an act or practice  
11 prohibited or made actionable by this [Act] or a rule adopted or order issued by the administrator  
12 under this [Act] and the person has not filed a consent to service of process under subsection (a),  
13 and subsequently engaged in an act or practice prohibited or made actionable by this [Act], or a  
14 rule adopted or order issued by the administrator under this [Act], the conduct constitutes the  
15 appointment of the administrator as the person's agent for service of process in a noncriminal  
16 proceeding against a person, successor, or personal representative.

17          (d) Service under subsection (a) or (c) may be made by ~~leaving~~ providing a copy of the  
18 process in the office of the administrator, but it is not effective unless:

19           (1) the plaintiff, who may be the administrator, promptly sends notice of the service  
20 and a copy of the process, ~~by registered or certified mail~~, return receipt requested, to the  
21 defendant or respondent at the address set forth in the consent to service of process or, if a  
22 consent to service of process has not been filed, at the last known address, ~~and~~ or takes other  
23 steps reasonably calculated to give notice; and

24           (2) the plaintiff files an affidavit of compliance with this subsection in the proceeding

1 on or before the return day of the process, if any, or within the time that the court, or the  
2 administrator in a proceeding before the administrator, allows.

3 (e) Service as provided in subsection (d) may be used in a proceeding before the  
4 administrator or by the administrator in a proceeding in which the administrator is the moving  
5 party.

6 (f) If the process is served under subsection (d), the court, or the administrator in a  
7 proceeding before the administrator, shall order continuances as are necessary or appropriate to  
8 afford the defendant or respondent reasonable opportunity to defend.

### 9 **Comments**

10 Source of Law: RUSA Section 708.

11 1. The required consent to service of process in Section 611(a) extends to process in any  
12 proceeding “which arises under this act,” and substituted service under Section 611(c) applies to  
13 any proceeding “which grows out of” conduct “prohibited or made actionable by this act.”  
14

15 2. In *Piantes v. Hayden-Stone, Inc.*, 514 P.2d 529 (Utah 1973), the court held that  
16 jurisdiction could be based either on a state blue sky provision like Section 611(c) or on a state’s  
17 long arm statute. Cf. *Paquinelli v. Wilson*, 365 S.E.2d 702 (N.C. App. 1988), where the  
18 defendants, both directors of a North Carolina corporation though residents of other states, were  
19 held to be subject to personal jurisdiction under a North Carolina statute applicable to  
20 nonresident directors “in all actions. . . on behalf of, or against said corporation in which said  
21 director is a necessary or party.” *Id.* at 730. See also *Illinois Nat’l Bank & Trust Co. of*  
22 *Rockford, Ill. v. Gulf States Energy Corp.*, 429 N.E.2d 1301 (Ill. App. 1981) (Illinois long arm  
23 statute applied to securities transactions). But see *Ek v. Nationwide Candy Div., Ltd.*, 403 So. 2d  
24 780, 784 (La. App. 1981), cert denied, 407 So.2d 732 La. (1981) (long arm statute did not make  
25 nonresident amenable to jurisdiction when he was never physically present in the forum state and  
26 the only contacts with that state were two telephone calls and a letter).  
27  
28  
29

### 30 **SECTION 613 ~~2~~. UNIFORMITY OF APPLICATION AND CONSTRUCTION.**

31 In applying and construing this Uniform Act, consideration shall be given to the need to promote  
32 uniformity of the law with respect to its subject matter among states that enact it and to the  
33 coordination of the application, construction, and administration of this [Act] with related  
34 federal acts ~~Securities Act of 1933, Securities Exchange Act of 1934, Public Utility Holding~~

1 ~~Company Act of 1935, Investment Company Act of 1940, Investment Advisers Act of 1940, and~~  
2 the rules and regulations adopted under those acts, all as in effect on the effective date of this  
3 [Act] [, or as later amended]. This Act shall be applied and construed to protect investors and, to  
4 the extent *[in a manner]* consistent with this purpose, to encourage capital formation.

### 5 **Comments**

6 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 415, RUSA Section 803.

7 1. The goals of uniformity among the states and coordination with related federal regulation,  
8 including self regulatory organizations, may be enhanced by greater use of information  
9 technology systems such as the Web-CRD, the Investment Adviser Registration Depository, or  
10 the Securities and Exchange Commission Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval  
11 System. These types of techniques are consistent with a potential system of “one stop filing” of  
12 all federal and state forms that is encouraged by this Act.

13  
14 2. This Act is intended to be revenue neutral in its impact on existing state laws.

15  
16 3. This Section is intended to be for the guidance of the administrator and any reviewing  
17 court.

18  
19  
20  
21 **SECTION 614 3. SEVERABILITY CLAUSE.** If any provision of this [Act] or its  
22 application to any person or circumstances is held invalid, the invalidity does not affect other  
23 provisions or applications of this [Act] which can be given effect without the invalid provision or  
24 application, and to this end the provisions of the [Act] are severable.

### 25 26 **Comments**

27 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 417; RUSA Section 805.

28 Cf. Florida Realty, Inc. v. Kirkpatrick, 509 S.W.2d 114, 121 (Mo. 1974) (reading exemption in  
29 blue sky law in the light of the common law rule that “a negation in or exception to a statute will be  
30 construed so as to avoid nullifying or restricting its apparent principal purpose . . . ‘and no conflict  
31 will be found unless the same is clear and inescapable’”).  
32

1  
2 **ARTICLE 7**  
3  
4 **TRANSITION**

5  
6  
7 **SECTION 701. EFFECTIVE DATE.** This [Act] takes effect on [insert date, which should  
8 be at least 60 days after enactment].

9 **Comments**

10 **Prior Provisions:** 1956 Act Section 419; RUSA Section 806.

11  
12  
13 **SECTION 702. REPEALS.** The following Act is repealed:

14 [Insert name of former State securities act].  
15

16 **SECTION 703. APPLICATION TO EXISTING PROCEEDING.**

17 (a) The predecessor act exclusively governs all actions, prosecutions, or proceedings that  
18 are pending or may be maintained or instituted on the basis of facts or circumstances occurring  
19 before the effective date of this [Act], except that a civil action may not be maintained to enforce  
20 any liability under the predecessor act unless commenced within any period of limitation that  
21 applied when the cause of action accrued or within two years after the effective date of this [Act],  
22 whichever is earlier.

23 (b) All effective registrations under the predecessor act, all administrative orders relating  
24 to the registrations, statements of policy, interpretive opinions, declaratory rulings, no action  
25 determinations, and all conditions imposed upon the registrations remain in effect while they  
26 would have remained in effect if this [Act] had not been enacted. They are considered to have  
27 been filed, entered, or imposed under this [Act], but are governed by the predecessor act.

28 (c) The predecessor act ~~applies in respect of~~ exclusively governs any offer or sale made

1 within one year after the effective date of this [Act] under an offering begun ~~in good faith~~ before  
2 the effective date of this [Act] ~~because of~~ using an exemption available under the predecessor  
3 act.

#### 4 **Comments**

5  
6 **Source of Law:** 1956 Act Section 418; RUSA Section 807.  
7

8 1. Prior law governs all suits, actions, prosecutions, or proceedings which are pending or may  
9 be initiated on the basis of facts or circumstances occurring before the effective date of a State blue  
10 sky statute. See *Hilton v. Mumaw*, 522 F.2d 588, 600 (9th Cir. 1975).  
11

12 2. Case law construing provisions of prior securities statutes that are identical or substantively  
13 similar may be relevant to construction of this Act.  
14